



EOS M10

Camera User Guide

- Make sure you read this guide, including the “Safety Precautions” (14) section, before using the camera.
- Reading this guide will help you learn to use the camera properly.
- Store this guide safely so that you can use it in the future.
- Click the buttons in the lower right to access other pages.
 - ▶ : Next page
 - ◀ : Previous page
 - 🔗 : Page before you clicked a link
- To jump to the beginning of a chapter, click the chapter title on the right.

ENGLISH

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

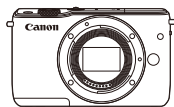


Before Use

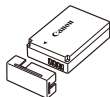
Initial Information

Package Contents

Before use, make sure the following items are included in the package. If anything is missing, contact your camera retailer.



Camera
(with body cap)



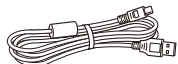
Battery Pack
LP-E12
(with terminal cover)



Battery Charger
LC-E12/LC-E12E



Neck Strap
EM-200DB



Interface Cable
IFC-400PCU

- Printed matter is also included.
- For details on the lens included in the lens kit, check information on the camera package.
- A memory card is not included.

Compatible Memory Cards

The following memory cards (sold separately) can be used, regardless of capacity.

- SD memory cards*¹
- SDHC memory cards *¹*²
- SDXC memory cards*¹*² 

*¹ Cards conforming to SD standards. However, not all memory cards have been verified to work with the camera.

*² UHS-I memory cards are also supported.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Preliminary Notes and Legal Information

- Take and review some test shots initially to make sure the images were recorded correctly. Please note that Canon Inc., its subsidiaries and affiliates, and its distributors are not liable for any consequential damages arising from any malfunction of a camera or accessory, including memory cards, that result in the failure of an image to be recorded or to be recorded in a way that is machine readable.
- Copyright laws in your country may prohibit the use of your recorded images or copyrighted music and images with music in the memory card for anything other than private enjoyment. Refrain from unauthorized recording that infringes on copyright law, and note that even for personal use, photography may contravene copyright or other legal rights at some performances or exhibitions, or in some commercial settings.
- For information on camera warranty or Canon Customer Support, please refer to the warranty information provided with your camera User Manual Kit.
- Although the screen (monitor) is produced under extremely high-precision manufacturing conditions and more than 99.99% of the pixels meet design specifications, in rare cases some pixels may be defective or may appear as red or black dots. This does not indicate camera damage or affect recorded images.
- When the camera is used over an extended period, it may become warm. This does not indicate damage.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

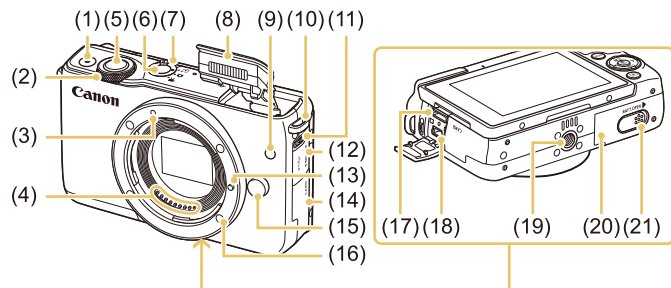
Accessories

Appendix

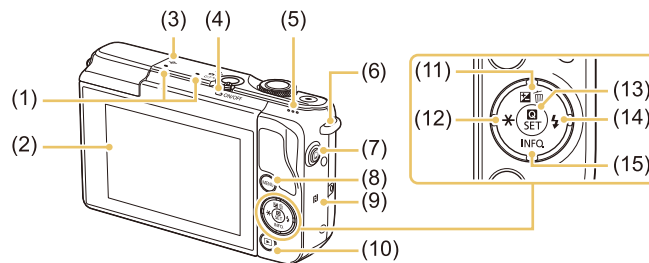
Index



Part Names



- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (1) Movie button | (12) Terminal cover |
| (2) Front dial | (13) Lens lock pin |
| (3) EF-M lens mount index | (14) Memory card cover |
| (4) Contacts | (15) Lens release button |
| (5) Shutter button | (16) Lens mount |
| (6) ON/OFF button | (17) HDMI™ terminal |
| (7) Mode switch | (18) Digital terminal |
| (8) Flash | (19) Tripod socket |
| (9) Lamp | (20) Battery cover |
| (10) Strap mount | (21) DC coupler terminal cover |
| (11) [Flash pop up] switch | |



- | | |
|---|---|
| (1) Microphone | (9) [N-Mark]*1 |
| (2) Screen (monitor)*2 / Touch-screen panel | (10) [Play] (Playback) button |
| (3) [Focal plane mark] | (11) [Exposure compensation] / [Single-image erase] / Up button |
| (4) Indicator | (12) [AE lock] / Left button |
| (5) Speaker | (13) [Quick Set menu/Set] button |
| (6) Strap mount | (14) [Flash] / Right button |
| (7) [Mobile Device Connection] button | (15) [INFO. (Information)] / Down button |
| (8) [MENU] button | |

*1 Used with NFC features (113).

*2 Gestures may not be detected as easily if you apply a screen protector. In this case, increase the sensitivity of the touch-screen panel (142).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

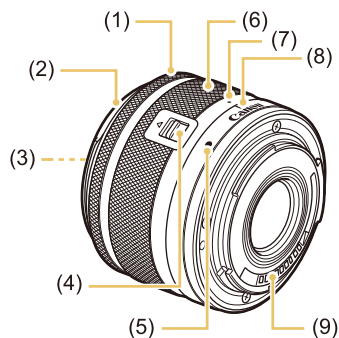
Appendix

Index



Lens

EF-M Lens



- (1) Focusing ring
- (2) Hood mount
- (3) Filter-mounting thread
- (4) Lens retraction switch
- (5) Lens mount index
- (6) Zoom ring
- (7) Lens retraction index
- (8) Zoom position index
- (9) Contacts

Conventions in This Guide

- In this guide, icons are used to represent the corresponding camera buttons and switches on which they appear or which they resemble.
- The following camera buttons and controls are represented by icons.



- Shooting modes and on-screen icons and text are indicated in brackets.
- ①: Important information you should know
- ✍: Notes and tips for expert camera use
- ☀: Indicates touch-screen operations
- 📖xx: Pages with related information (in this example, “xx” represents a page number)
- Instructions in this guide apply to the camera under default settings.
- For convenience, all lenses and mount adapters are simply referred to as “lenses” and “mount adapters”, whether they are included or sold separately.
- The illustrations in this guide show the camera with the EF-M15-45mm f/3.5-6.3 IS STM lens attached as an example.
- For convenience, all supported memory cards are simply referred to as the “memory card”.
- The symbols “▶ Still Images” and “▶ Movies” below titles indicate how the function is used—whether for still images or movies.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Table of Contents

Before Use

Initial Information	2
Package Contents	2
Compatible Memory Cards	2
Preliminary Notes and Legal Information	3
Part Names	4
Lens	5
Conventions in This Guide	5
Common Camera Operations	13
Safety Precautions	14

Basic Guide

Basic Operations	17
Initial Preparations	17
Attaching the Strap	17
Holding the Camera	17
Charging the Battery Pack	18
Inserting the Battery Pack	19
Removing the Battery Pack	19
Inserting Your Memory Card	19
Removing the Memory Card	20
Setting the Date and Time	20
Changing the Date and Time	21
Display Language	21
Attaching a Lens	22
Detaching a Lens	22
Lens Instruction Manuals	23
Attaching EF and EF-S Lenses	23

Detaching a Lens	24
Using a Tripod	24
Using Lens Image Stabilization	24
Trying the Camera Out	25
Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto)	25
Viewing	26
Erasing Images	27

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics	28
On/Off	28
Power-Saving Features (Auto Power Down)	29
Power Saving in Shooting Mode	29
Power Saving in Playback Mode	29
Shutter Button	29
Adjusting the Screen Angle	30
Shooting Display Options	30
Using the Quick Set Menu	31
Using Touch-Screen Operations to Configure Settings	31
Using the Menu Screen	32
Touch-Screen Operations	33
On-Screen Keyboard	33
Indicator Display	34
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode	35
Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings	35
Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto)	35
Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode	37
Digest Movie Playback	38
Still Images/Movies	38
Still Images	38
Movies	38

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Scene Icons	39
On-Screen Frames	40
Common, Convenient Features	40
Using the Self-Timer	40
Using the Self-Timer to Avoid Camera Shake	41
Customizing the Self-Timer	41
Shooting by Touching the Screen (Touch Shutter)	42
Continuous Shooting	42
Image Customization Features	43
Changing Image Quality	43
Capturing in RAW Format	44
Using the Menu	45
Changing the Aspect Ratio	45
Changing Movie Image Quality	46
Customizing Camera Operation	47
Deactivating the Red-Eye Reduction Lamp	47
Changing the Image Display Period after Shots	47
Other Shooting Modes	48
Shooting with Your Favorite Settings (Creative Assist)	48
Saving/Loading Settings	49
Saving Settings	49
Loading Settings	50
Using Settings from Images	50
Viewing Settings	50
How [Z] Mode Corresponds to Creative Zone Settings	50
Shooting Yourself under Optimal Settings (Self Portrait)	51
Specific Scenes	52
Applying Special Effects	53
Enhancing Colors in Shots of Food (Food)	53
Shooting High-Contrast Scenes (High Dynamic Range)	54
Adding Artistic Effects	54

Shooting with a Fish-Eye Lens Effect (Fish-Eye Effect)	55
Shots Resembling Oil Paintings (Art Bold Effect)	55
Shots Resembling Watercolors (Water Painting Effect)	56
Shots Resembling Miniature Models (Miniature Effect)	56
Playback Speed and Estimated Playback Time (for One-Minute Clips)	57
Shooting with a Toy Camera Effect (Toy Camera Effect)	57
Shooting with a Soft Focus Effect	58
Shooting in Monochrome (Grainy B/W)	58
Recording Movies in Movie Mode	59
Shooting Still Images during Movie Recording	59
Locking or Changing Image Brightness before Recording	60
Sound Settings	60
Adjusting the Recording Volume	60
Deactivating the Wind Filter	61
Using the Attenuator	61
P Mode	62
Shooting in Program AE ([P] Mode)	62
Setting Up Shooting from a Single Screen	63
Image Brightness (Exposure)	63
Adjusting Image Brightness (Exposure Compensation)	63
Locking Image Brightness / Exposure (AE Lock)	64
Changing the Metering Method	64
Changing the ISO Speed	65
Adjusting ISO Auto Settings	65
Auto Correction of Brightness and Contrast (Auto Lighting Optimizer)	66
Shooting Bright Subjects (Highlight Tone Priority)	66
Image Colors	67
Adjusting White Balance	67
Custom White Balance	67

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Manually Correcting White Balance	68
Customizing Colors (Picture Style).....	69
Customizing Picture Styles.....	70
Saving Customized Picture Styles	71
Focusing.....	71
Choosing the AF Method	71
1-point AF	71
<i>i</i> +Tracking.....	72
Choosing Subjects to Focus On (Touch AF).....	72
Shooting with Servo AF	73
Changing the Focus Setting	74
Fine-Tuning the Focus.....	74
Shooting in Manual Focus Mode.....	75
Easily Identifying the Focus Area (MF Peaking).....	76
Flash.....	76
Changing the Flash Mode	76
Auto	77
On.....	77
Slow Synchro	77
Off.....	77
Adjusting the Flash Exposure Compensation.....	77
Shooting with the FE Lock.....	78
Changing the Flash Timing.....	78
Changing the Flash Metering Mode	78
Resetting Flash Settings.....	79
Other Settings	79
Changing the IS Mode Settings.....	79
Recording Movies with Subjects at the Same Size Shown before Shooting	80
Correcting Lens Vignetting / Chromatic Aberration	80
Changing the Noise Reduction Level	81
Using Multi Shot Noise Reduction.....	81

Reducing Noise at Slow Shutter Speeds.....	82
Tv, Av, and M Mode	83
Specific Shutter Speeds ([Tv] Mode).....	83
Specific Aperture Values ([Av] Mode).....	84
Depth-of-Field Preview	85
Specific Shutter Speeds and Aperture Values ([M] Mode)	85
Adjusting the Flash Output	86
Recording Movies at Specific Shutter Speeds and Aperture Values.....	87
Customizing Controls and Display	88
Customizing Display Information.....	88
Configuring Custom Functions	88
Assigning Functions to Buttons	90
Playback Mode	91
Viewing.....	91
Touch-Screen Operations.....	92
Switching Display Modes.....	93
Customizing the Shooting Information Displayed.....	93
Overexposure Warning (for Image Highlights)	94
Brightness Histogram	94
RGB Histogram	94
Viewing Short Movies Created When Shooting Still Images (Digest Movies).....	94
Viewing by Date.....	95
Browsing and Filtering Images.....	95
Navigating through Images in an Index	95
Touch-Screen Operations.....	96
Double-Touch Magnification	96
Finding Images Matching Specified Conditions.....	96
Using the Front Dial to Jump between Images.....	97
Image Viewing Options	98

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Magnifying Images	98
Touch-Screen Operations.....	98
Viewing Slideshows.....	99
Protecting Images	99
Using the Menu	100
Choosing Images Individually.....	100
Selecting a Range	100
Protecting All Images at Once	101
Clearing All Protection at Once	101
Erasing Images	102
Erasing Multiple Images at Once.....	102
Choosing a Selection Method	102
Choosing Images Individually.....	103
Selecting a Range	103
Specifying All Images at Once.....	103
Rotating Images	104
Using the Menu	104
Deactivating Auto Rotation	104
Rating Images (Rating)	105
Using the Menu	105
Editing Still Images.....	106
Resizing Images	106
Using the Menu	106
Cropping	107
Applying Filter Effects.....	108
Correcting Red-Eye	108
Editing Movies	109
Reducing File Sizes.....	110
Image Quality of Compressed Movies	110
Editing Digest Movies	111

Wi-Fi Functions	112
Available Wi-Fi Features	112
Importing Images to a Smartphone	113
Sending Images to an NFC-Compatible Smartphone	113
Connecting via NFC When Camera Is Off or in	
Shooting Mode	113
Connecting via NFC When Camera Is in Playback Mode...	115
Sending to a Smartphone Assigned to the Button.....	115
Adding a Smartphone Using the Wi-Fi Menu	117
Using Another Access Point	118
Confirming Access Point Compatibility	118
Using WPS-Compatible Access Points	119
Connecting to Listed Access Points	120
Previous Access Points	121
Sending Images to a Registered Web Service.....	121
Registering Web Services	121
Registering CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.....	121
Registering Other Web Services	123
Uploading Images to Web Services	124
Viewing Images Using a Media Player.....	125
Printing Images Wirelessly from a Connected Printer.....	126
Sending Images to Another Camera	128
Image Sending Options.....	129
Sending Multiple Images	129
Choosing Images Individually.....	129
Selecting a Range	129
Sending Rated Images	130
Notes on Sending Images	130
Choosing the Number of Recording Pixels (Image Size)	130
Adding Comments	131
Sending Images Automatically (Image Sync).....	131

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Initial Preparations	131
Preparing the Camera	131
Preparing the Computer	132
Sending Images.....	132
Viewing Images Sent via Image Sync on a Smartphone.....	133
Shooting Remotely	134
Editing or Erasing Wi-Fi Settings.....	135
Editing Connection Information	135
Changing a Device Nickname	135
Erasing Connection Information	136
Specifying Images Viewable from Smartphones	136
Changing the Camera Nickname	137
Returning the Wi-Fi Settings to Default	137
Setting Menu.....	138
Adjusting Basic Camera Functions	138
Date-Based Image Storage	138
File Numbering	138
Formatting Memory Cards.....	139
Low-Level Formatting	139
Changing the Video System	139
Using Eco Mode	140
Power-Saving Adjustment	140
Screen Brightness	140
World Clock	141
Date and Time	141
Display Language.....	141
Muting Camera Sounds.....	141
Hiding Hints and Tips.....	142
Listing Shooting Modes by Icon.....	142
Adjusting the Touch-Screen Panel	142
Automatically Locking the Touch-Screen Panel	142
Cleaning the Image Sensor	142

Disabling Auto Cleaning	142
Activating Sensor Cleaning	143
Cleaning the Sensor Manually	143
Checking Certification Logos.....	144
Setting Copyright Information to Record in Images.....	144
Deleting All Copyright Information	144
Adjusting Other Settings.....	145
Restoring Default Camera Settings	145
Accessories	146
System Map	147
Optional Accessories.....	148
Lenses	148
Power Supplies.....	148
Other Accessories	148
Printers	149
Photo and Movie Storage	149
Using Optional Accessories.....	150
Playback on a TV	150
Powering the Camera with Household Power.....	151
Using the Software.....	152
Software	152
Software Instruction Manual	152
Checking Your Computer Environment	152
Installing the Software	153
Saving Images to a Computer	153
Printing Images	154
Easy Print	154
Configuring Print Settings.....	155
Cropping Images before Printing.....	156
Choosing Paper Size and Layout before Printing	156
Available Layout Options.....	157

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Printing ID Photos	157
Printing Movie Scenes	157
Movie Printing Options	157
Adding Images to the Print List (DPOF)	158
Configuring Print Settings	158
Setting Up Printing for Individual Images	159
Setting Up Printing for a Range of Images	159
Setting Up Printing for All Images	159
Clearing All Images from the Print List	159
Adding Images to a Photobook	160
Choosing a Selection Method	160
Adding Images Individually	160
Adding All Images to a Photobook	160
Clearing All Images from the Print List	160
Appendix	161
Troubleshooting	161
On-Screen Messages	165
On-Screen Information	167
When Shooting	167
Battery Level	167
During Playback	168
Info Display 1	168
Info Display 2	168
Info Display 3	168
Info Display 4	168
Info Display 5	169
Info Display 6	169
Summary of Movie Control Panel	169
Functions and Menu Tables	170
Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode	170
Quick Set Menu	172
Shooting Tab	174

C.Fn Tab	179
INFO. Quick Control	180
Set Up Tab	180
Playback Tab	181
Quick Set Menu in Playback Mode	181
Handling Precautions	182
Specifications	183
Type	183
Image Sensor	183
Recording Format	183
Image Processing during Shooting	184
Autofocus	184
Exposure Control	184
Shutter	185
Flash Units	185
Drive, Self-timer System	185
Still Image Shooting	185
Movie Shooting	185
Screen (Monitor)	186
Playback Functions	187
Post-processing of Images	187
Direct Printing	187
Custom Functions	187
Interfaces	187
Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN)	188
Network Functions	188
Power Supplies	188
Dimensions and Weight	188
Operating Environment	188
Number of Shots per Memory Card	189
Recording Time per Memory Card	189
Approximate Built-in Flash Range	190

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Battery Pack LP-E12	190
Battery Charger LC-E12/LC-E12E	190
Index.....	191
Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN) Precautions.....	194
Radio Wave Interference Precautions.....	194
Security Precautions.....	194
Trademarks and Licensing	195
Disclaimer.....	196

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Common Camera Operations

Shoot

- Use camera-determined settings (Auto Mode, Hybrid Auto Mode)
 -  35,  37
- Shoot with effects of your choice (Creative Assist)
 -  48
- Blur the background / Keep the background in sharp focus (Av Mode)
 -  84
- Freeze the action / Blur the action (Tv Mode)
 -  83
- Shoot yourself under optimal settings (Self Portrait)
 -  51
- Apply special effects
 -  53
- Shoot several shots at once (Continuous)
 -  42
- Without using the flash (Flash Off)
 -  36
- Include yourself in the shot (Self-Timer)
 -  40

View

- View images (Playback Mode)
 -  91
- Automatic playback (Slideshow)
 -  99
- On a TV
 -  150

- On a computer
 -  152
- Browse through images quickly
 -  95
- Erase images
 -  102

Record/View Movies

- Record movies
 -  35,  59
- View movies (Playback Mode)
 -  91

Print

- Print pictures
 -  154

Save

- Save images to a computer
 -  153

Use Wi-Fi Functions

- Send images to a smartphone
 -  113
- Share images online
 -  121
- Send images to a computer
 -  131

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Safety Precautions

- Before using the product, ensure that you read the safety precautions described below. Always ensure that the product is used correctly.
- The safety precautions noted here are intended to prevent you and other persons from being injured or incurring property damage.
- Be sure to also check the guides included with any separately sold accessories you use.



Warning

Denotes the possibility of serious injury or death.

- Do not trigger the flash in close proximity to people's eyes. Exposure to the intense light produced by the flash could damage eyesight. In particular, remain at least 1 meter (3.3 feet) away from infants when using the flash.

- Store this equipment out of the reach of children and infants. A strap wound around a child's neck may result in asphyxiation. If your product uses a power cord, mistakenly winding the cord around a child's neck may result in asphyxiation.

- Use only recommended power sources.
- Do not disassemble, alter, or apply heat to the product.
- Do not peel off the adhesive covering, if the battery pack has it.
- Avoid dropping or subjecting the product to severe impacts.
- Do not touch the interior of the product if it is broken, such as when dropped.
- Stop using the product immediately if it emits smoke or a strange smell, or otherwise behaves abnormally.
- Do not use organic solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner to clean the product.
- Avoid contact with liquid, and do not allow liquid or foreign objects inside.

This could result in electrical shock or fire.

If the product gets wet, or if liquid or foreign objects get inside, remove the battery pack/batteries or unplug immediately.

- If your model has a viewfinder or interchangeable lens, do not look through the viewfinder or lens at bright light sources (such as the sun on a clear day, or a bright artificial light source).

This may damage your eyesight.

- If your model has an interchangeable lens, do not leave the lens (or the camera with the lens attached) in the sun without the lens cap on. This could result in a fire.

- Do not touch the product during thunderstorms if it is plugged in. This could result in electrical shock or fire. Immediately stop using the product and distance yourself from it.

- Use only the recommended battery pack/batteries.

- Do not place the battery pack/batteries near or in direct flame. This may cause the battery pack/batteries to explode or leak, resulting in electrical shock, fire, or injuries. If leaking battery electrolyte comes into contact with eyes, mouth, skin, or clothing, immediately flush with water.

- If the product uses a battery charger, note the following precautions.
 - Remove the plug periodically and, using a dry cloth, wipe away any dust and dirt that has collected on the plug, the exterior of the power outlet, and the surrounding area.
 - Do not insert or remove the plug with wet hands.
 - Do not use the equipment in a manner that exceeds the rated capacity of the electrical outlet or wiring accessories. Do not use if the plug is damaged or not fully inserted in the outlet.
 - Do not allow dust or metal objects (such as pins or keys) to contact the terminals or plug.
 - Do not cut, damage, alter, or place heavy items on the power cord, if your product uses one.

This could result in electrical shock or fire.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



● Turn the camera off in places where camera use is prohibited. The electromagnetic waves emitted by the camera may interfere with the operation of electronic instruments and other devices. Exercise adequate caution when using the product in places where use of electronic devices is restricted, such as inside airplanes and medical facilities.

● Do not allow the camera to maintain contact with skin for extended periods.

Even if the camera does not feel hot, this may cause low-temperature burns, manifested in redness of the skin or blistering. Use a tripod in hot places, or if you have poor circulation or insensitive skin.



Caution

Denotes the possibility of injury.

● When carrying the product by the strap, be careful not to bang it, subject it to strong impacts or shocks, or let it get caught on other objects.

● Be careful not to bump or push strongly on the lens. This could lead to injury or damage the camera.

● Be careful not to subject the screen to strong impacts. If the screen cracks, injury may result from the broken fragments.

● When using the flash, be careful not to cover it with your fingers or clothing. This could result in burns or damage to the flash.

● Avoid using, placing, or storing the product in the following places:

- Places subject to direct sunlight
- Places subject to temperatures above 40 °C (104 °F)
- Humid or dusty places

These could cause leakage, overheating, or an explosion of the battery pack/batteries, resulting in electrical shock, fire, burns, or other injuries. Overheating and damage may result in electrical shock, fire, burns, or other injuries.

● The slideshow transition effects may cause discomfort when viewed for prolonged periods.

● When using optional lenses, lens filters, or filter adapters (if applicable), be sure to attach these accessories firmly. If the lens accessory becomes loose and falls off, it may crack, and the shards of glass may lead to cuts.

● On products that raise and lower the flash automatically, make sure to avoid pinching your fingers with the lowering flash. This could result in injury.

Caution

Denotes the possibility of property damage.

● Do not aim the camera at intense light sources, such as the sun on a clear day or an intense artificial light source. Doing so may damage the image sensor or other internal components.

● When using the camera on a sandy beach or at a windy location, be careful not to allow dust or sand to enter the camera.

● On products that raise and lower the flash automatically, do not push the flash down or pry it open. This may cause the product to malfunction.

● Wipe off any dust, grime, or other foreign matter on the flash with a cotton swab or cloth. The heat emitted from the flash may cause foreign matter to smoke or the product to malfunction.

● Remove and store the battery pack/batteries when you are not using the product. Any battery leakage that occurs may cause product damage.

● Before you discard the battery pack/batteries, cover the terminals with tape or other insulators. Contacting other metal materials may lead to fire or explosions.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



- Unplug any battery charger used with the product when not in use. Do not cover with a cloth or other objects when in use.

Leaving the unit plugged in for a long period of time may cause it to overheat and distort, resulting in fire.

- Do not leave any dedicated battery packs near pets.

Pets biting the battery pack could cause leakage, overheating, or explosion, resulting in product damage or fire.

- If your product uses multiple batteries, do not use batteries that have different levels of charge together, and do not use old and new batteries together. Do not insert the batteries with the + and – terminals reversed.

This may cause the product to malfunction.

- Do not sit down with the camera in your pant pocket.

Doing so may cause malfunctions or damage the screen.

- When putting the camera in your bag, ensure that hard objects do not come into contact with the screen. Also close the screen (so that it faces the body), if your product's screen closes.

- Do not attach any hard objects to the product.

Doing so may cause malfunctions or damage the screen.



Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Basic Guide

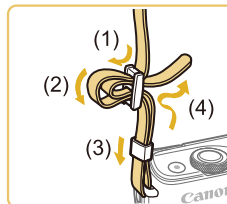
Basic Operations

Basic information and instructions, from initial preparations to shooting and playback

Initial Preparations

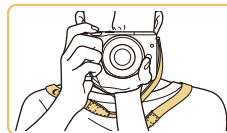
Prepare for shooting as follows.

Attaching the Strap



- Attach the included strap to the camera as shown.
- On the other side of the camera, attach the strap the same way.

Holding the Camera



- Place the strap around your neck.
- When shooting, keep your arms close to your body and hold the camera securely to prevent it from moving. If you have raised the flash, do not rest your fingers on it.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

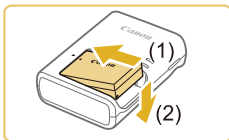
Appendix

Index



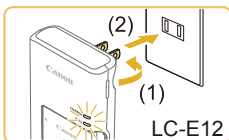
Charging the Battery Pack

Before use, charge the battery pack with the included charger. Be sure to charge the battery pack initially, because the camera is not sold with the battery pack charged.



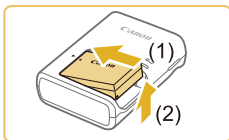
1 Insert the battery pack.

- Remove the cover from the battery pack, align the ▲ marks on the battery pack and charger, and insert the battery pack by pushing it in (1) and down (2).



2 Charge the battery pack.

- LC-E12: Flip out the plug (1) and plug the charger into a power outlet (2).
- LC-E12E: Plug the power cord into the charger, then plug the other end into a power outlet.
- The charging lamp turns orange, and charging begins.
- When charging is finished, the lamp turns green.



3 Remove the battery pack.

- After unplugging the battery charger, remove the battery pack by pushing it in (1) and up (2).



- To protect the battery pack and keep it in optimal condition, do not charge it continuously for more than 24 hours.
- Battery charger problems may trigger a protective circuit that stops charging and makes the charge lamp blink in orange. If this happens, disconnect the charger's power plug from the power outlet and remove the battery pack. Attach the battery pack to the charger again and wait a while before connecting the charger to a power outlet again.
- For battery chargers that use a power cord, do not attach the charger or cord to other objects. Doing so could result in malfunction or damage to the product.



- For details on charging time, see "Battery Charger LC-E12/LC-E12E" (190), and for the number of shots and recording time possible with a fully charged battery pack, see "Power Supplies" (188).
- Charged battery packs gradually lose their charge, even when they are not used. Charge the battery pack on (or immediately before) the day of use.
- As a visual reminder of the charge status, attach the battery cover with ▲ visible on a charged battery pack and concealed on an uncharged one.
- The charger can be used in areas with 100 – 240 V AC power (50/60 Hz). For power outlets in a different format, use a commercially available adapter for the plug. Never use an electrical transformer designed for traveling, which may damage the battery pack.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

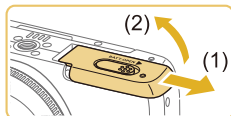
Appendix

Index



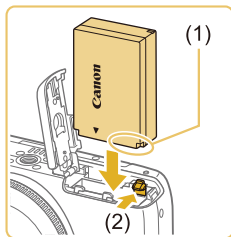
Inserting the Battery Pack

Insert the included battery pack.



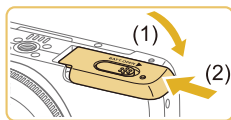
1 Open the cover.

- Slide the cover (1) and open it (2).



2 Insert the battery pack.

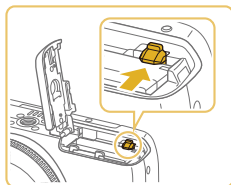
- Holding the battery pack with the terminals (1) facing as shown, press the battery lock (2) in the direction of the arrow and insert the battery pack until the lock clicks shut.
- If you insert the battery pack facing the wrong way, it cannot be locked into the correct position. Always confirm that the battery pack is facing the right way and locks when inserted.



3 Close the cover.

- Lower the cover (1) and hold it down as you slide it, until it clicks into the closed position (2).

Removing the Battery Pack



- Open the cover and press the battery lock in the direction of the arrow.
- The battery pack will pop up.

Inserting Your Memory Card

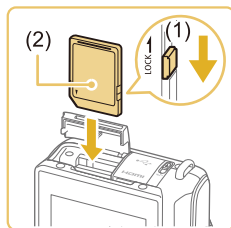
Insert a memory card (sold separately).

Note that before using a memory card that is new or has been formatted in another device, you should format the memory card with this camera (139).



1 Open the cover.

- Open the cover in the direction shown.



2 Check your card's write-protect switch and insert the memory card.

- Recording is not possible on memory cards with a write-protect switch when the switch is in the locked position. Slide the switch to the unlocked position (1).
- Insert the memory card with the label (2) facing as shown until it clicks into place.
- Make sure the memory card is facing the right way when you insert it. Inserting memory cards facing the wrong way may damage the camera.



3 Close the cover.

- Close the cover in the direction shown until it clicks shut.



- For guidelines on how many shots or hours of recording can be saved on one memory card, see "Number of Shots per Memory Card" (189).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



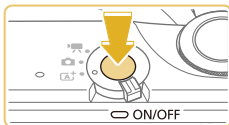
Removing the Memory Card



- Open the cover and push the memory card in until it clicks, and then slowly release the memory card.
- The memory card will pop up.

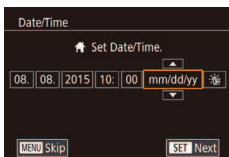
Setting the Date and Time

Set the current date and time correctly as follows if the [Date/Time] screen is displayed when you turn the camera on. Information you specify this way is recorded in image properties when you shoot, and it is used when you manage images by shooting date or print images showing the date.



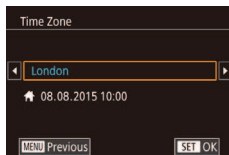
1 Turn the camera on.

- Press the ON/OFF button.
- The [Date/Time] screen is displayed.



2 Set the date and time.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an item.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to specify the date and time.
- When finished, press the [ⓘ] button.



3 Specify your home time zone.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose your home time zone.



4 Finish the setup process.

- Press the [ⓘ] button when finished. After a confirmation message, the setting screen is no longer displayed.
- To turn off the camera, press the ON/OFF button.



- Unless you set the date, time, and home time zone, the [Date/Time] screen will be displayed each time you turn the camera on. Specify the correct information.



- To set daylight saving time (1 hour ahead), choose [☀] in step 2 and then choose [☀] by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons.



- You can also set the date and time by touching the desired item on the screen in step 2 and then touching [▲][▼], followed by [SET]. Similarly, you can also set your home time zone by touching [◀][▶] on the screen in step 3, followed by [SET].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



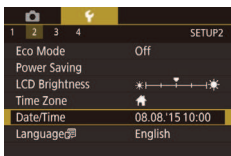
Changing the Date and Time

Adjust the date and time as follows.



1 Access the menu screen.

- Press the [MENU] button.



2 Choose [Date/Time].

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [DISP] dial to choose [2] tab.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Date/Time], and then press the [OK] button.



3 Change the date and time.

- Follow step 2 in “Setting the Date and Time” (p.20) to adjust the settings.
- Press the [MENU] button to close the menu screen.



- Date/time settings can be retained for about 3 weeks by the camera's built-in date/time battery (backup battery) after the battery pack is removed.
- The date/time battery will be charged in about 4 hours once you insert a charged battery pack or connect the camera to an AC adapter kit (sold separately, p.148), even if the camera is left off.
- Once the date/time battery is depleted, the [Date/Time] screen will be displayed when you turn the camera on. Set the correct date and time as described in “Setting the Date and Time” (p.20).

Display Language

Change the display language as needed.



1 Enter Playback mode.

- Press the [▶] button.



2 Access the setting screen.

- Press and hold the [OK] button, and then press the [MENU] button.



3 Set the display language.

- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose a language, and then press the [OK] button.
- Once the display language has been set, the setting screen is no longer displayed.



- You can also change the display language by pressing the [MENU] button and choosing [Language] on the [2] tab.



- You can also set the display language by touching a language on the screen in step 3 and then touching it again.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Attaching a Lens

The camera is compatible with EF-M lenses. If you use Mount Adapter EF-EOS M, you can also use EF and EF-S lenses (📖23).

1 Make sure the camera is off.

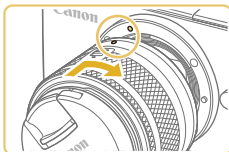
2 Remove the caps.

- Remove the lens cap and body cap by turning them in the directions shown.

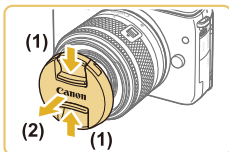


3 Attach the lens.

- Align the mount indexes (the white dots) on the lens and camera, and then turn the lens in the direction shown until it clicks into place.

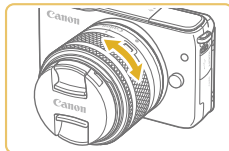
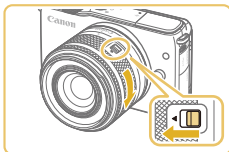


4 Remove the front lens cap.



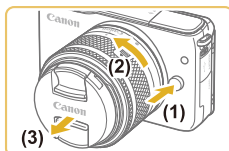
5 Prepare to shoot.

- With the lens retraction index aligned with the zoom position index, hold the lens retraction switch toward [▲] as you turn the zoom ring a little in the direction shown, and then release the switch.
- Continue turning the zoom ring until it clicks, indicating that the lens is ready for shooting.



- To protect the lens, keep the lens cap on when the camera is not in use.

Detaching a Lens



- To retract the lens, hold the lens retraction switch toward [▲] as you turn the zoom ring. Align the lens retraction index with the zoom position index, and then release the switch.
- To zoom, turn the zoom ring on the lens with your fingers.
- If you want to zoom, do it before focusing. Turning the zoom ring after achieving focus may throw off the focus slightly.

- Make sure the camera is off.
- Hold down the lens release button (1) as you turn the lens in the direction shown (2).
- Turn the lens until it stops, and then remove it in the direction shown (3).
- Attach the lens cap to the lens after removal.



- Minimizing Dust
 - When changing lenses, do it quickly in a place with minimal dust.
 - When storing the camera without a lens attached, be sure to attach the body cap to the camera.
 - Remove dust on the body cap before attaching it.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- Since the image sensor size is smaller than the 35mm film format, it will look like the lens focal length is increased by approx. 1.6x. For example, the focal length of a 15-45mm lens is approximately equivalent to a focal length of 24-72mm on a 35mm camera.

Lens Instruction Manuals

Download lens manuals from the following page.

<http://www.canon.com/icpd/>

Attaching EF and EF-S Lenses

If you use Mount Adapter EF-EOS M, you can also use EF and EF-S lenses.

1 Make sure the camera is off.

2 Remove the caps.

- Follow step 2 in “Attaching a Lens” (p.22) to remove the caps.



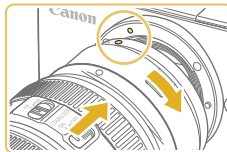
3 Attach the lens to the adapter.

- To mount an EF lens, align the red dots on the lens and adapter, and then turn the lens in the direction shown until it clicks into place.
- To mount an EF-S lens, align the white squares on the lens and adapter, and then turn the lens in the direction shown until it clicks into place.



4 Attach the adapter to the camera.

- Align the mount indexes (the white dots) on the adapter and camera, and then turn the lens in the direction shown until it clicks into place.



Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

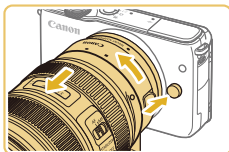
Index





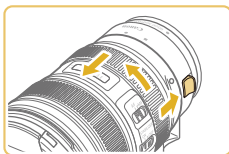
- When holding or carrying a camera with a lens that is heavier than the camera, support the lens.
- Adapters may extend the minimum focusing distance or affect the maximum magnification or shooting range of the lens.
- If the front part (focusing ring) of the lens rotates during autofocus, do not touch the rotating part.
- The focus preset and power zoom features of some super telephoto lenses are not supported.

Detaching a Lens



1 Detach the adapter.

- Make sure the camera is off.
- Hold down the lens release button and turn the adapter (with the lens attached) in the direction shown.
- Turn the adapter until it stops, then detach it.

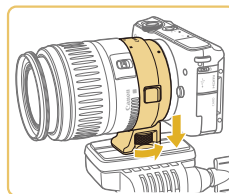


2 Detach the lens.

- Hold down the lens release lever on the adapter and turn the lens counterclockwise.
- Turn the lens until it stops, then detach it.
- Attach the lens cap to the lens after removal.

Using a Tripod

When using the adapter with a tripod, use the tripod mount included with the adapter. Do not use the camera's tripod socket.



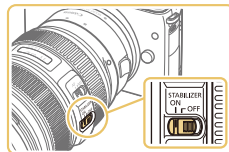
- Attach the tripod mount to the adapter. Turn the tripod mount knob to ensure that it is securely attached.
- Attach the tripod to the tripod mount socket.



- With EF lenses that incorporate a tripod mount (such as super telephoto lenses), attach the tripod to the tripod mount on the lens.

Using Lens Image Stabilization

Correct camera shake by using a lens with built-in image stabilization. Lenses with built-in image stabilization are named with "IS".



- Slide the image stabilization switch on the lens to [ON].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



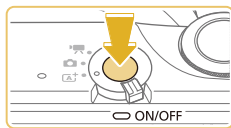
Trying the Camera Out

► Still Images ► Movies

Follow these instructions to turn the camera on, shoot still images or movies, and then view them.

Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto)

For fully automatic selection of the optimal settings for specific scenes, simply let the camera determine the subject and shooting conditions.



1 Turn the camera on.

- Press the ON/OFF button.



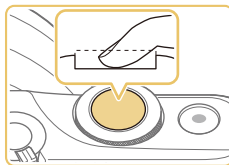
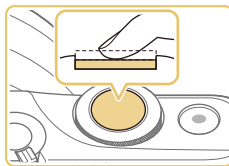
2 Enter [A+] mode.

- Set the mode switch to [A+].
- A scene icon (1) is displayed in the upper left of the screen.
- Also shown on the top of the screen are the number of shots (2) and length of movies (3) that the card can hold.
- Frames are displayed around faces and subjects that have been detected, indicating that they are in focus.



3 Compose the shot.

- When using a zoom lens, zoom by turning the zoom ring on the lens with your fingers.



4 Shoot. Shooting Still Images

1) Focus.

- Press the shutter button lightly, halfway down. The camera beeps twice after focusing, and AF frames are displayed to indicate image areas in focus.

- If [Raise the flash] is displayed, move the [Flash] switch to raise the flash. It will fire when shooting. If you prefer not to use the flash, push it down with your finger, into the camera.

2) Shoot.

- Press the shutter button all the way down to shoot. (In low-light conditions, the flash fires automatically when you have raised it.)
- Your shot remains displayed on the screen for about two seconds.
- Even while the shot is displayed, you can take another shot by pressing the shutter button again.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



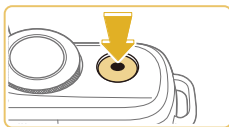
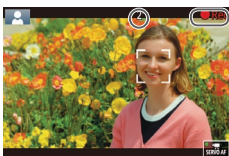
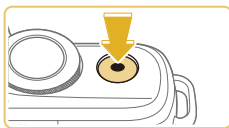
Recording Movies

1) Start recording.

- Press the movie button. Recording begins, and [● Rec] is displayed with the elapsed time.
- Black bars displayed on the top and bottom edges of the screen indicate image areas not recorded.
- Frames displayed around any detected faces indicate that they are in focus.
- Once recording begins, take your finger off the movie button.

2) Finish recording.

- To stop movie recording, press the movie button again.



- If the camera cannot focus on subjects when you press the shutter button lightly, an orange AF frame is displayed with [!], and no picture is taken if you press the shutter button all the way down.
- Once movie recording with a Dynamic IS-compatible lens begins (80), the display area narrows and subjects are enlarged.

Viewing

After shooting images or movies, you can view them on the screen as follows.



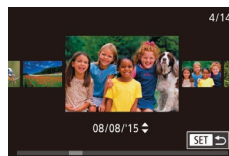
1 Enter Playback mode.

- Press the [▶] button.
- Your last shot is displayed.



2 Choose images.

- To view the previous image, press the [◀] button. To view the next image, press the [▶] button.



- To access this screen (Scroll Display mode), press and hold the [◀][▶] buttons for at least one second. In this mode, press the [◀][▶] buttons to browse through images.
- To return to single-image display, press the [SET] button.
- Movies are identified by a [SET ▶] icon. To play movies, go to step 3.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





3 Play movies.

- Press the button, press the buttons to choose , and then press the button again.
- Playback now begins, and after the movie is finished, is displayed.
- To adjust the volume, press the buttons during playback.



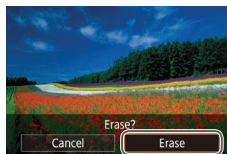
- To switch to Shooting mode from Playback mode, press the shutter button halfway (29), press the button, or move the mode switch.



- You can also start movie playback by touching . To adjust the volume, quickly drag up or down across the screen during playback.

Erasing Images

You can choose and erase unneeded images one by one. Be careful when erasing images, because they cannot be recovered.



1 Choose an image to erase.

- Press the buttons to choose an image.

2 Erase the image.

- Press the button.
- After [Erase?] is displayed, press the buttons to choose [Erase], and then press the button.
- The current image is now erased.
- To cancel erasure, press the buttons to choose [Cancel], and then press the button.



- You can choose multiple images to erase at once (102).



- You can also erase the current image by touching [Erase] on the screen in step 2.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

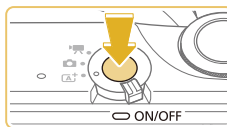


Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Other basic operations and more ways to enjoy your camera, including shooting and playback options

On/Off



Shooting Mode

- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the camera on and prepare for shooting.
- To turn the camera off, press the ON/OFF button again.



Playback Mode

- Press the [▶] button to turn the camera on and view your shots.
- To switch to Shooting mode, press the [▶] button again.
- To turn off the camera, press the ON/OFF button.



- When an EF-M lens is attached to the camera and the power is off, the aperture narrows to reduce the amount of light entering the camera and protect the internal components of the camera. Accordingly, the camera makes a small noise when turned on or off as the aperture is adjusted.
- The sensor is cleaned when the camera is turned on or off, which may also make a small noise. Even when the camera is off, [] is displayed as the sensor is cleaned. However, the [] icon may not be displayed if you switch the camera on and off quickly in succession.
- To switch to Shooting mode from Playback mode, press the shutter button halfway (29), press the [▶] button, or move the mode switch.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Power-Saving Features (Auto Power Down)

As a way to conserve battery power, the camera automatically deactivates the screen (Display Off) and then turns itself off after a specific period of inactivity.

Power Saving in Shooting Mode

The screen is automatically deactivated after about one minute of inactivity. In about two more minutes, the camera turns itself off. To activate the screen and prepare for shooting when the screen is off and the indicator is lit, press the shutter button halfway (📖29).

Power Saving in Playback Mode

The camera turns itself off automatically after about five minutes of inactivity.

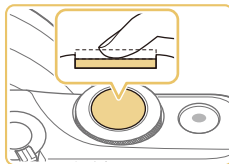


- You can deactivate Auto Power Down and adjust the timing of Display Off, if you prefer (📖140).
- Power saving is not active while the camera is connected to other devices via Wi-Fi (📖112), or when connected to a computer (📖153).

Shutter Button

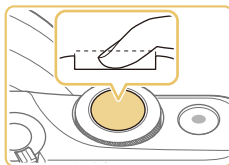
To ensure that the subject is in focus, begin by holding the shutter button halfway down, and once the subject is in focus, press the button all the way down to shoot.

In this manual, shutter button operations are described as pressing the button *halfway* or *all the way down*.



1 Press halfway. (Press lightly to focus.)

- Press the shutter button halfway. The camera beeps twice, and frames are displayed around image areas in focus.



2 Press all the way down. (From the halfway position, press fully to shoot.)

- The camera now shoots.



- Subjects may be out of focus if you shoot without initially pressing the shutter button halfway.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

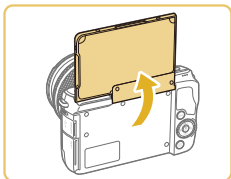
Appendix

Index



Adjusting the Screen Angle

You can adjust the screen angle and orientation to suit the scene or how you are shooting.



- The screen can be opened to about 180°.
- When including yourself in shots, you can view a mirror image of yourself by rotating the screen around toward the front of the camera.



- When the camera is not in use, keep the screen closed.
- Do not force the screen open too far, which may damage the camera.



- To cancel reverse display, choose MENU (📖32) > [📷1] tab > [Reverse Disp.] > [Off].

Shooting Display Options

Press the [▼] button to show or hide shooting information or the histogram.

To customize what is displayed, access [📷1] tab > [Shooting information display] (📖88).



- Screen brightness is automatically increased by the night view function when you are shooting under low light, making it easier to check how shots are composed. However, on-screen image brightness may not match the brightness of your shots. Note that any on-screen image distortion or jerky subject motion will not affect recorded images.
- For playback display options, see "Switching Display Modes" (📖93).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Using the Quick Set Menu

Configure commonly used functions in the **Q** (Quick Set) menu.

Note that menu items and options vary depending on the shooting mode (172) or playback mode (181).



1 Access the **Q** menu.

- Press the **Q** button.



(1) (2)

2 Choose a menu item.

- Press the **▲**/**▼** buttons to choose a menu item (1).
- Available options (2) are shown at the bottom of the screen.



3 Choose an option.

- Press the **◀**/**▶** buttons or turn the **Q** dial to choose an option.
- Items labeled with a **[MENU]** icon can be configured by pressing the **[MENU]** button.



4 Confirm your choice and exit.

- Press the **Q** button.
- The screen before you pressed the **Q** button in step 1 is displayed again, showing the option you configured.



- To undo any accidental setting changes, you can restore the camera's default settings (145).
- You can also exit by choosing **↶** in the menu items and pressing the **Q** button.

Using Touch-Screen Operations to Configure Settings



- Touch **Q** in the upper right of the screen to access the Quick Set menu.
- Touch a menu item and then an option to complete the setting.
- To return to the previous screen, touch the **↶** menu item, or touch the selected option again.
- You can access the screen for options labeled with a **[MENU]** icon by touching **[MENU]**.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



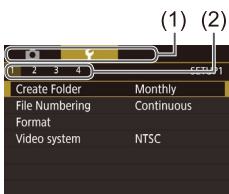
Using the Menu Screen

Configure a variety of camera functions through the menu screen as follows.



1 Access the menu screen.

- Press the [MENU] button.



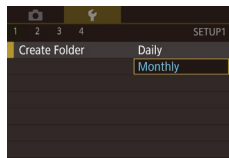
2 Choose a tab.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [DIAL] dial to choose a tab.
- Tabs represent functions (1), such as shooting ([CAMERA]), playback ([PLAY]), or settings ([INFO]), or pages within each function (2). Tabs are identified in this manual by combining the function and page, as in [P.1].



3 Choose a menu item.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an item, and then press the [OK] button.
- For menu items with options not shown, first press the [OK] button to switch screens, and then press the [▲][▼] buttons to select the menu item.
- To return to the previous screen, press the [MENU] button.



4 Choose an option.

- When options are listed vertically, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an option.
- When options are listed horizontally, press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an option.

5 Confirm your choice and exit.

- Press the [OK] button to confirm your choice and return to the menu item selection screen.
- Press the [MENU] button to return to the screen displayed before you pressed the [MENU] button in step 1.



- To undo any accidental setting changes, you can restore the camera's default settings ([P.145]).
- Available menu items vary depending on the selected shooting or playback mode ([P.174 – P.181]).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

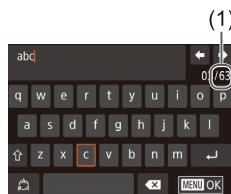


Touch-Screen Operations

- To choose tabs, press the **[MENU]** button to access the menu screen, and then touch the desired function tab and page tab.
- Touch an item to choose it, and then touch it again.
- Touch an option to complete the setting and return to the menu item selection screen.
- To configure menu items for which options are not shown, first touch the menu item to access the setting screen. To return to the previous screen, touch **[MENU]**.
- You can also touch input elements (such as check boxes or text fields) to select them, and you can enter text by touching the on-screen keyboard.
- Touching **[INFO]**, **[MENU]**, or **[SET]** has the same effect as pressing the **[▼]**, **[MENU]**, or **[Ⓔ]** buttons, respectively.
- To dismiss the menu, press the **[MENU]** button again.

On-Screen Keyboard

Use the on-screen keyboard to enter Wi-Fi (📶112) settings and other information. Note that the length and type of information you can enter varies depending on the function you are using.



Entering Characters

- Touch the characters to enter them.
- The amount of information you can enter (1) varies depending on the function you are using.

Moving the Cursor

- Touch **[←]**/**[→]**.

Entering Line Breaks

- Touch **[↵]**.

Switching Input Modes

- To switch to numbers or symbols, touch **[123]**.
- Touch **[ABC]** to enter capital letters.
- Available input modes vary depending on the function you are using.

Deleting Characters

- Touch **[X]** to delete the previous character.
- Touching and holding **[X]** will delete five characters at a time.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Confirming Input and Returning to the Previous Screen

- Press the [MENU] button.



- For some functions, [↩] is not displayed and cannot be used.



- Another way to use the keyboard is by pressing the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to select characters or icons, and then pressing the [Ⓢ] button. You can also move the cursor by turning the [DIAL] dial. To return to the previous screen, press the [MENU] button.

Indicator Display

The indicator on the back of the camera (4) lights up or blinks depending on the camera status.

Color	Indicator Status	Camera Status
Green	On	Connected to a computer (153), or display off (29, 140, 140)
	Blinking	Starting up, recording/reading/transmitting images, shooting long exposures (83, 85), or connecting/transmitting via Wi-Fi



- When the indicator blinks green, never turn the camera off, open the memory card or battery cover, or shake or jolt the camera, which may corrupt images or damage the camera or memory card.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

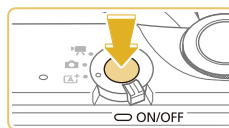
Convenient mode for easy shots with greater control over shooting

Shooting with Camera-Determined Settings

For fully automatic selection of the optimal settings for specific scenes, simply let the camera determine the subject and shooting conditions.

Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto)

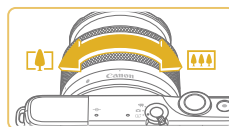
► Still Images ► Movies



- 1 Turn the camera on.
 - Press the ON/OFF button.



- 2 Enter [A+] mode.
 - Set the mode switch to [A+].
 - A scene icon is displayed in the upper left of the screen (see 39).
 - Frames are displayed around faces and subjects that have been detected, indicating that they are in focus.



- 3 Compose the shot.
 - When using a zoom lens, zoom by turning the zoom ring on the lens with your fingers.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

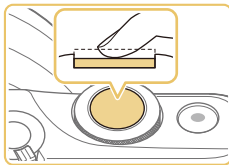


4 Shoot.

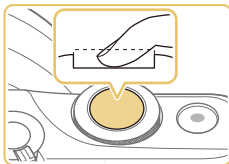
Shooting Still Images

1) Focus.

- Press the shutter button halfway. The camera beeps twice after focusing, and AF frames are displayed to indicate image areas in focus.

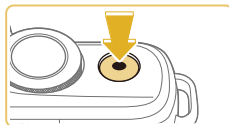
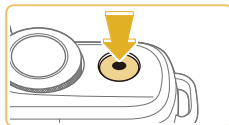


- If [Raise the flash] is displayed, move the  switch to raise the flash. It will fire when shooting. If you prefer not to use the flash, push it down with your finger, into the camera.



2) Shoot.

- Press the shutter button all the way down to shoot. (In low-light conditions, the flash fires automatically when you have raised it.)
- Your shot remains displayed on the screen for about two seconds.
- Even while the shot is displayed, you can take another shot by pressing the shutter button again.



Recording Movies

1) Start recording.

- Press the movie button. Recording begins, and [● Rec] is displayed with the elapsed time.
- Black bars displayed on the top and bottom edges of the screen indicate image areas not recorded.
- Frames displayed around any detected faces indicate that they are in focus.
- Once recording begins, take your finger off the movie button.

2) Resize the subject and recompose the shot as needed.

- To resize the subject, repeat the operations in step 3. However, note that the sound of camera operations will be recorded.
- When you recompose shots, the focus, brightness, and colors will be automatically adjusted.

3) Finish recording.

- To stop movie recording, press the movie button again.
- Recording will stop automatically when the memory card becomes full.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

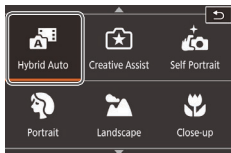
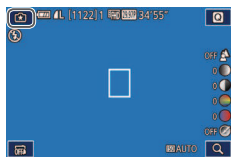
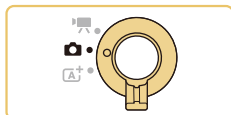
Index



Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode

► Still Images ► Movies

You can make a short movie of the day just by shooting still images. The camera records 2 – 4-second clips of scenes before each shot, which are later combined in a digest movie.



1 Enter [A+] mode.

- Set the mode switch to [A+].
- Touch [A+], and then touch [A+] (by turning the [A+] dial, touching [A+], or dragging up or down on the screen to display it).
- To confirm your choice, touch [OK].

2 Compose the shot.

- Follow steps 3 – 4 in “Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto)” (p.35) to compose the shot and focus.
- For more impressive digest movies, aim the camera at subjects about four seconds before shooting still images.

3 Shoot.

- Follow step 4 in “Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto)” (p.36) to shoot a still image.
- The camera records both a still image and movie clip. The clip, which ends with the still image and a shutter sound, forms a single chapter in the digest movie.



- Battery life is shorter in this mode than in [A+] mode, because digest movies are recorded for each shot.
- A digest movie may not be recorded if you shoot a still image immediately after turning the camera on, choosing [A+] mode, or operating the camera in other ways.
- Any sounds and vibrations from your camera or lens operations will be recorded in digest movies.



- Digest movie image quality is [HD 29.97P] for NTSC or [HD 25.00P] for PAL. This varies depending on the video output format (p.139).
- Sounds are not played when you press the shutter button halfway or trigger the self-timer.
- Digest movies are saved as separate movie files in the following cases even if they were recorded on the same day in [A+] mode.
 - The digest movie file size reaches approximately 4 GB, or the total recording time reaches approximately 16 minutes and 40 seconds.
 - The digest movie is protected (p.99).
 - Daylight saving time (p.20), video system (p.139), time zone (p.141), or copyright information (p.144) settings are changed.
 - A new folder is created (p.138).
- Recorded shutter sounds cannot be modified or erased.
- If you prefer to record digest movies without still images, adjust the setting in advance. Choose MENU (p.32) > [A+] tab > [Digest Type] > [No Stills] (p.32).
- Individual chapters can be edited (p.111).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Digest Movie Playback

Display a still image shot in [A] mode to play the digest movie created on the same day, or specify the date of the digest movie to play (194).

Still Images/Movies



- If the camera makes no operating sounds, it may have been turned on while holding down the [MENU] button. To activate sounds, press the [MENU] button, choose [Beep] on the [3] tab, and then press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [On].

Still Images



- If the camera cannot focus on subjects when you press the shutter button halfway, an orange AF frame is displayed with [1], and no picture is taken if you press the shutter button all the way down.
- Focusing may take longer or be incorrect when no people or other subjects are detected, when subjects are dark or lack contrast, or in very bright conditions.
- A blinking [9] icon warns that images are more likely to be blurred by camera shake. In this case, mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to keep it still.
- If your shots are dark despite the flash firing, move closer to the subject. For details on the flash range, see "Approximate Built-in Flash Range" (190).
- To reduce red-eye and to assist in focusing, the lamp may be lit when shooting in low-light conditions.
- Vignetting or dark image areas may occur with some lenses if the flash fires.
- A blinking [4] icon displayed when you attempt to shoot indicates that shooting is not possible until the flash has finished recharging. Shooting can resume as soon as the flash is ready, so either press the shutter button all the way down and wait, or release it and press it again.
- Although you can shoot again before the shooting screen is displayed, your previous shot may determine the focus, brightness, and colors used.

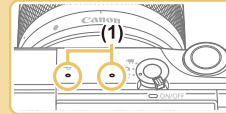


- Vignetting appears in previews immediately after your shots, before the final, saved images are displayed.
- You can change how long images are displayed after shots (47).

Movies



- Keep your fingers away from the microphone (1) while recording movies. Blocking the microphone may prevent audio from being recorded or may cause the recording to sound muffled.



- Avoid touching camera controls other than the movie button and touch-screen panel when recording movies, because sounds made by the camera will be recorded. To adjust settings or perform other operations during recording, use the touch-screen panel if possible.
- Mechanical sounds from the lens and camera are also recorded.
- Once movie recording with a Dynamic IS-compatible lens begins (80), the display area narrows and subjects are enlarged to allow for correction of significant camera shake. To shoot subjects at the same size shown before shooting, adjust the image stabilization setting (79).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- Audio is recorded in stereo.
- During movie recording, lens operating noises from auto focusing may also be recorded. If you prefer not to record sound, choose MENU (📖32) > [📷5] tab > [Sound recording] > [Disable].
- To keep the focus fixed during movie recording, choose MENU (📖32) > [📷5] tab > [Movie Servo AF] > [Disable].
- Individual movies that exceed 4 GB are divided into multiple files. To notify you about 30 sec. before the movie reaches 4 GB, the elapsed time on the recording screen will start flashing. If you continue shooting and exceed 4 GB, the camera automatically creates a new movie file and flashing stops. Note that automatic playback of divided movie files one after another is not supported. Play each movie separately.

Scene Icons

► Still Images ► Movies

In [A+] and [A-] modes, shooting scenes determined by the camera are indicated by the icon displayed, and corresponding settings are automatically selected for optimal focusing, subject brightness, and color.

Background	When Shooting People		Icon Background Color
	People	In Motion	
Bright			Gray
Bright and Backlit			
With Blue Sky			Light Blue
Blue Sky and Backlit			
Spotlights		—	Dark Blue
Dark		—	
Dark, Using Tripod		—	

Background	When Shooting Other Subjects			Icon Background Color
	Other Subjects	In Motion	At Close Range	
Bright				Gray
Bright and Backlit				
With Blue Sky				Light Blue
Blue Sky and Backlit				
Sunsets		—	—	Orange
Spotlights		—		Dark Blue
Dark				
Dark, Using Tripod		—	—	

- “In Motion” icons are not displayed when you shoot with the self-timer (📖40) or in [A-] mode, or when you record a movie.
- “When Shooting People” and “In Motion” icons are not displayed when you have set the lens to **MF** or you are using a non-autofocus lens.



- Try shooting in [P] mode (📖62) if the scene icon does not match actual shooting conditions, or if it is not possible to shoot with your expected effect, color, or brightness.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



On-Screen Frames

► Still Images ► Movies

A variety of frames are displayed once the camera detects subjects you are aiming the camera at.

- A white frame is displayed around the subject (or person's face) detected as the main subject. Frames follow moving subjects within a certain range as they are tracked to keep them in focus.
- Frames turn green after you press the shutter button halfway and the camera focuses.
- Frames turn blue in [A+] mode if subject motion is detected when you press the shutter button halfway. Once subjects are in focus after focus and brightness are readjusted using Servo AF, the frame turns green.
- An orange frame is displayed with [●] if the camera cannot focus on subjects when you press the shutter button halfway.



- Try shooting in [P] mode (62) if no frames are displayed, if frames are not displayed around desired subjects, or if frames are displayed on the background or similar areas.



- To turn off Servo AF, set [AF auto switch] to [Disable] on the [C4] tab. Note that "In Motion" icons (39) will no longer be displayed. [AF auto switch] is automatically set to [Disable] and cannot be changed when the self-timer (40) is set to an option other than [Off].



- To choose subjects to focus on, touch the desired subject on the screen. [C5] is displayed, and the camera enters Touch AF mode.

Common, Convenient Features

► Still Images ► Movies

Using the Self-Timer

► Still Images ► Movies

With the self-timer, you can include yourself in group photos or other timed shots. The camera will shoot about 10 seconds after you press the shutter button.



1 Configure the setting.

- Press the [C1] button, choose [C5] in the menu, and then choose [C6] (31).
- Once the setting is complete, [C6] is displayed.

2 Shoot.

- For Still Images: Press the shutter button halfway to focus on the subject, and then press it all the way down.
- For Movies: Press the movie button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

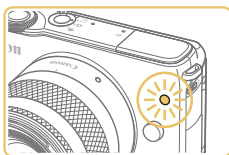
Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- Once you start the self-timer, the lamp will blink and the camera will play a self-timer sound.
- Two seconds before the shot, the blinking and sound will speed up. (The lamp will remain lit in case the flash fires.)
- To cancel shooting after you have triggered the self-timer, press the **[MENU]** button.
- To restore the original setting, choose **[C]** in step 1.

Using the Self-Timer to Avoid Camera Shake

► Still Images ► Movies

This option delays shutter release until about two seconds after you have pressed the shutter button. If the camera is unsteady while you are pressing the shutter button, it will not affect your shot.



- Follow step 1 in “Using the Self-Timer” (40) and choose **[C]**.
- Once the setting is complete, **[C]** is displayed.
- Follow step 2 in “Using the Self-Timer” (40) to shoot.

Customizing the Self-Timer

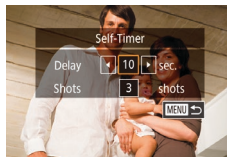
► Still Images ► Movies

You can specify the delay (0 – 30 seconds) and number of shots (1 – 10).



1 Choose **[C]**.

- Following step 1 in “Using the Self-Timer” (40), choose **[C]** and press the **[MENU]** button.



2 Configure the setting.

- Press the **[▲]**/**[▼]** buttons to choose the delay time or number of shots.
- Press the **[◀]**/**[▶]** buttons to choose a value, and then press the **[MENU]** button.
- Once the setting is complete, **[C]** is displayed.
- Follow step 2 in “Using the Self-Timer” (40) to shoot.



- For movies recorded using the self-timer, recording begins after your specified delay time, but specifying the number of shots has no effect.



- When you specify multiple shots, image brightness and white balance are determined by the first shot. More time is required between shots when the flash fires or when you have specified to take many shots. Shooting will stop automatically when the memory card becomes full.
- When a delay longer than two seconds is specified, two seconds before the shot, the lamp blinking and self-timer sound will speed up. (The lamp will remain lit in case the flash fires.)

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shooting by Touching the Screen (Touch Shutter)

► Still Images ► Movies

With this option, instead of pressing the shutter button, you can simply touch the screen and release your finger to shoot. The camera will focus on subjects and adjust image brightness automatically.



1 Enable the touch-shutter function.

- Touch [OFF] and change it to [ON].

2 Shoot.

- Touch the subject on the screen to take the picture.
- To cancel touch shutter, touch [OFF] and change it to [OFF].



- An orange AF frame indicates that the camera could not focus on subjects. No shot will be taken.



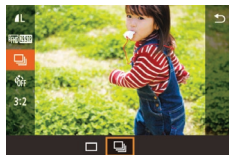
- Even while the shot is displayed, you can prepare for the next shot by touching [OK].
- You can also configure touch-shutter settings by choosing MENU (p. 32) > [CAMERA] tab > [Touch Shutter]. To hide the Touch Shutter setting icon, set [Touch shutter icon] to [Off].

Continuous Shooting

► Still Images ► Movies

In [A+] mode, hold the shutter button all the way down to shoot continuously.

For details on the continuous shooting speed, see “Drive, Self-timer System” (p. 185).



1 Configure the setting.

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [A+] in the menu, and then choose [Touch Shutter] (p. 31).
- Once the setting is complete, [Touch Shutter] is displayed.

2 Shoot.

- Hold the shutter button all the way down to shoot continuously.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- During continuous shooting, the focus, exposure, and colors are locked at the position/level determined when you pressed the shutter button halfway.
- Cannot be used with the self-timer (164).
- Shooting may stop momentarily or continuous shooting may slow down depending on shooting conditions, camera settings, and the zoom position.
- As more shots are taken, shooting may slow down.
- There may be a delay before you can shoot again, depending on shooting conditions, the type of memory card, and how many shots you took continuously.
- Shooting may slow down if the flash fires.
- With Touch Shutter (142), the camera shoots continuously while you touch the screen. Focus, exposure, and color tone during continuous shooting remain constant after they are determined for the first shot.
- Screen display in continuous shooting differs from the images actually captured and may look out of focus. Some lenses may also darken the continuous shooting screen display, but images are captured with standard brightness.



- When nine or fewer shots can be taken continuously, the number available is shown to the right of the total remaining shots on the top of the screen (167). It is not shown when 10 or more shots can be taken.
- Fewer continuous shots may be available under some shooting conditions or camera settings.

Image Customization Features

Changing Image Quality

► Still Images ► Movies

Choose from 8 combinations of size (number of pixels) and compression (image quality). Also specify whether to capture images in RAW format (144). For guidelines on how many of each kind of image can fit on a memory card, see "Number of Shots per Memory Card" (189).



- Press the [Q] button, choose [Q] in the menu, and choose the desired option (131).
- The option you configured is now displayed.
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [Q].



- [Q] and [Q] indicate different levels of image quality depending on the extent of compression. At the same size (number of pixels), [Q] offers higher image quality. Although [Q] images have slightly lower image quality, more fit on a memory card. Note that image quality is [Q] for sizes of [S2] or [S3].
- Not available in [S&B] mode.
- You can also configure this setting by choosing MENU (132) > [CAM1] tab > [Image quality].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



When deciding the number of pixels based on print size, use the following table as a guide for images with a 3:2 aspect ratio.

L	A2 (16.5 x 23.4 in.)
M	A3 (11.7 x 16.5 in.)
S1	A4 (8.3 x 11.7 in.)
S2	3.5 x 5 in., 5 x 7 in., Postcard
S3	For e-mailing and similar purposes

Capturing in RAW Format

The camera can capture images in JPEG and RAW format.

JPEG Images	Processed in the camera for optimal image quality and compressed to reduce file size. However, the compression process is irreversible, and images cannot be restored to their original, unprocessed state. Image processing may also cause some loss of image quality.
RAW Images	“Raw” (unprocessed) data, recorded with essentially no loss of image quality from the camera's image processing. The data cannot be used in this state for viewing on a computer or printing. You must first use the software (Digital Photo Professional, 152) to convert images to ordinary JPEG or TIFF files. Images can be adjusted with minimal loss of image quality.



- Press the **[INFO]** button, and then choose **[MENU]** in the menu (131).
- To capture in RAW format only, choose the **[RAW]** option.
- To capture images in both JPEG and RAW format simultaneously, choose the JPEG image quality, and then press the **[MENU]** button. A **[✓]** mark is displayed next to **[RAW]**. To undo this setting, follow the same steps and remove the **[✓]** mark next to **[RAW]**.



- When transferring RAW images (or RAW and JPEG images recorded together) to a computer, always use the dedicated software “EOS Utility” (152).



- For details on the relationship between the number of recording pixels and the number of shots that will fit on a card, see “Number of Shots per Memory Card” (189).
- The file extension for JPEG images is .JPG, and the extension for RAW images is .CR2. File names of JPEG and RAW images captured together have the same image number.
- For details on Digital Photo Professional and EOS Utility applications, see “Software” (152).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

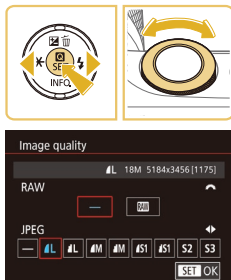
Accessories

Appendix

Index



Using the Menu



- Press the **[MENU]** button, choose [Image quality] on the **[CAMERA]** tab, and then press the **[INFO]** button (32).
- To capture in RAW format at the same time, turn the **[WHEEL]** dial and choose **[RAW]** under [RAW]. Note that only JPEG images are captured when **[-]** is selected.
- Press the **[LEFT]**/**[RIGHT]** buttons to choose [JPEG], and then choose the image size and quality. Note that only RAW images are captured when **[-]** is selected.
- When finished, press the **[INFO]** button to return to the menu screen.



- [RAW] and [JPEG] cannot both be set to **[-]**.

Changing the Aspect Ratio

► Still Images ► Movies

Change the image aspect ratio (ratio of width to height) as follows.



- Press the **[INFO]** button, choose **[3:2]** in the menu, and choose the desired option (31).
- Once the setting is complete, the screen aspect ratio will be updated.
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose **[3:2]**.

16:9	Used for display on widescreen HDTVs or similar display devices.
3:2	Native aspect ratio of the camera screen, equivalent to 35mm film. Used for printing images at 5 x 7-inch or postcard sizes.
4:3	Used for printing images at 3.5 x 5-inch or A-series sizes.
1:1	Square aspect ratio.



- Not available in **[A]** mode.
- You can also configure this setting by choosing MENU (32) > **[CAMERA]** tab > [Still Image Aspect Ratio].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Changing Movie Image Quality

► Still Images ► Movies

Adjust movie image quality (image size and frame rate). The frame rate indicates how many frames are recorded per second, which is determined automatically based on the NTSC or PAL setting (139). For guidelines on the total recording time for movies at each level of image quality that will fit on a memory card, see “Recording Time per Memory Card” (189).



- Press the button, choose [Movie rec. size] in the menu, and choose the desired option (131).
- The option you configured is now displayed.

For NTSC Video

Image Quality	Number of Recording Pixels	Frame Rate	Details
29.97P	1920 x 1080	29.97 fps	For shooting in Full HD.
23.98P	1920 x 1080	23.98 fps	23.98P enables a cinematic frame rate.
59.94P	1280 x 720	59.94 fps	For shooting in HD.
29.97P	640 x 480	29.97 fps	For shooting in standard definition.

For PAL Video

Image Quality	Number of Recording Pixels	Frame Rate	Details
25.00P	1920 x 1080	25.00 fps	For shooting in Full HD.
50.00P	1280 x 720	50.00 fps	For shooting in HD.
25.00P	640 x 480	25.00 fps	For shooting in standard definition.



- Black bars (displayed on the left and right in 29.97P and 25.00P modes and on the top and bottom in 29.97P, 23.98P, 59.94P, 25.00P, and 50.00P modes) indicate image areas not recorded.
- You can also configure this setting by choosing MENU (132) > 5 > [Movie rec. size].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Customizing Camera Operation

Customize shooting functions on the [CAMERA] tab of the menu screen as follows.

For instructions on menu functions, see “Using the Menu Screen” (p.32).

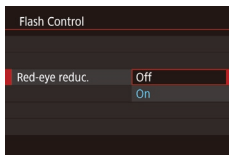
Deactivating the Red-Eye Reduction Lamp

► Still Images ► Movies

You can deactivate the red-eye reduction lamp that lights up to reduce red-eye when the flash is used in low-light shots.

1 Access the [Flash Control] screen.

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Flash Control] on the [CAMERA] tab, and then press the [INFO] button (p.32).

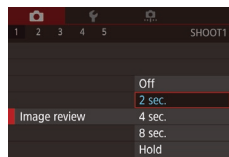


2 Configure the setting.

- Choose [Red-eye reduc.], and then choose [Off] (p.32).
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [On].

Changing the Image Display Period after Shots

► Still Images ► Movies



- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Image review] on the [CAMERA] tab, and then choose the desired option.
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [2 sec.].

2 sec., 4 sec., 8 sec.	Displays images for the specified time. Even while the shot is displayed, you can take another shot by pressing the shutter button halfway again.
Hold	Displays images until you press the shutter button halfway.
Off	No image display after shots.



- By pressing the [INFO] button while an image is displayed after shooting, you can switch the display information.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Other Shooting Modes

Shoot more effectively in various scenes, and take shots enhanced with unique image effects or captured using special functions



Shooting with Your Favorite Settings (Creative Assist)

Capture shots just as you imagine them, without having to know photography terms. Choose from easy-to-understand options to defocus the background, adjust brightness, or customize shots in other ways as you watch the screen. Once you save the settings you like, it's easy to apply them again later. You can also apply settings from past images captured in **[Creative Assist]** mode.

This mode makes it easier to learn about Creative Zone shooting modes (**[P]**, **[Tv]**, **[Av]**, and **[M]**), because you can check the corresponding settings in these modes when viewing images shot in **[Creative Assist]** mode.

Customize shots in these ways.

Background	Adjust background defocusing. Choose higher values to make backgrounds sharper, or lower values to make them blurrier.
Brightness	Adjust image brightness. Choose higher values to brighten images.
Contrast	Adjust contrast. Choose higher values to increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjust the vividness of colors. Choose higher values to make colors more vivid, or lower values to make them subdued.
Color tone	Adjust color tone. Choose higher values to make colors warmer, or lower values to make them cooler.
Monochrome	Choose from five monochrome options: [BW B/W] , [S Sepia] , [B Blue] , [P Purple] , or [G Green] . Set to [OFF] to shoot in color. Note that [Saturation] and [Color tone] are not available with options other than [OFF] .

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

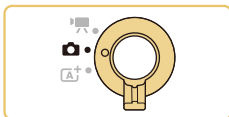
Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

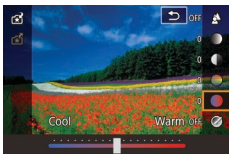
Index





1 Enter [C★] mode.

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (p.37) and choose [C★].



2 Configure the settings.

- Press the [Q] button, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an item, and then adjust the setting, either by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons or turning the [Sun] dial (p.31).
- Once you are finished adjusting each item, press the [MENU] button to return to the shooting screen.

3 Shoot.



- [Background] is not available when the flash is used.



- To prevent your settings from being reset when the camera is turned off, set [Keep C★ setting] on the [C4] tab to [Enable].



- You can also access the setting screen by touching [Q] in the upper right, and you can touch items on the setting screen to adjust them. Touch [Back] to return to the shooting screen.

Saving/Loading Settings

Save your favorite settings and use them again as needed.

Saving Settings



- Follow steps 1 – 2 in “Shooting with Your Favorite Settings (Creative Assist)” (p.49) to choose [C★] and configure the settings as desired.
- Press the [Q] button, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [C★], and then choose a profile to save the settings to, either by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons or turning the [Sun] dial.
- You can save setting in up to six profiles.
- [MENU Compare] is displayed if you have already assigned the selected profile. With this profile selected, you can press the [MENU] button to view the previous settings and compare them to your new settings.
- Press the [Q] button, press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK] after the confirmation message, and then press the [Q] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Loading Settings



- Follow step 1 in “Shooting with Your Favorite Settings (Creative Assist)” (book 49) to choose [★].
- Press the [M] button, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [★], and then choose a profile to load, either by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons or turning the [dial].
- Press the [M] button to apply the saved settings.
- To return without applying settings, choose [-] and press the [M] button.

Using Settings from Images

Load settings from images captured in [★] mode to use them when shooting.

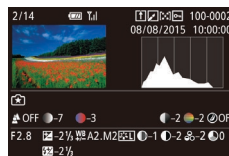


- Follow step 1 in “Shooting with Your Favorite Settings (Creative Assist)” (book 49) to choose [★].
- Press the [▶] button to enter Playback mode, and then choose an image captured in [★] mode to display it.
- Press the [M] button, choose [★] in the menu, and press the [M] button again.
- The settings are applied, and the camera enters Shooting mode.



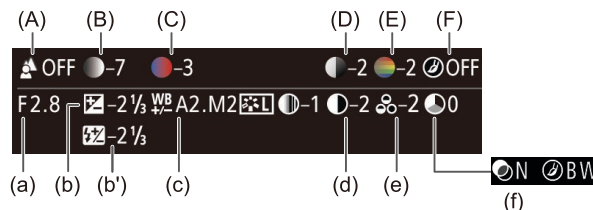
- Settings cannot be applied in modes other than [★]. A message is displayed if this is attempted, and [★] mode is not entered. To apply settings, set the shooting mode to [★].
- [★] is not displayed for images shot in modes other than [★] mode.

Viewing Settings



- To check the settings used for images in [★] mode that you are viewing, press the [▼] button. The screen at left is displayed.

How [★] Mode Corresponds to Creative Zone Settings



[★] Mode Setting	Creative Zone Setting
(A) Background	(a) Aperture value (book 84)
(B) Brightness	(b) Exposure compensation (book 63) However, in flash shots, corresponds to (b'), flash exposure compensation (book 77)
(C) Color tone	(c) White balance correction (book 67)
(D) Contrast	(d) Picture Style contrast (book 70)
(E) Saturation	(e) Picture Style saturation (book 70)
(F) Monochrome	(f) Picture Style [filter icon] filter and toning effect (book 70)

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

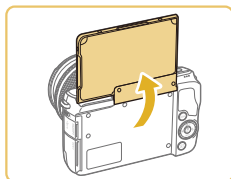
Index



Shooting Yourself under Optimal Settings (Self Portrait)

► Still Images ► Movies

For self-portraits, customizable image processing includes skin smoothing as well as brightness and background adjustment to make yourself stand out.



1 Open the screen.

- Open the screen as shown.



2 Choose [Self Portrait].

- Touch [Self Portrait].



3 Configure the setting.

- On the screen, touch the icon of the setting to configure.



- Choose the desired option.
- To return to the previous screen, touch [Back].

4 Shoot.

Item	Details
	Choose from [AUTO] or one of five levels of background defocusing.
	Choose from five levels of brightness.
	Choose from three levels of skin smoothing. Skin smoothing is optimized for the main subject's face.



- [Self Portrait] is not displayed when the mode switch is set to [Movie] (p.59), or in [Self Portrait] mode (p.51).
- To return to the previous mode after you have touched [Self Portrait] to enter [Self Portrait] mode, close the screen or tilt it to an angle less than 180°.
- Areas other than people's skin may be modified, depending on the shooting conditions.
- Try taking some test shots first to make sure you obtain the desired results.



- [Self Portrait] mode can also be accessed by following step 1 in "Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode" (p.37).
- In [Flash] flash mode, [Self Portrait] is set to [AUTO] and cannot be changed.
- In [Self Portrait] mode, the time left before shooting is shown on the top of the screen when you activate the self-timer by selecting [Self Timer], or by selecting [Self Timer] and setting the time to 3 seconds or more.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Specific Scenes

Choose a mode matching the shooting scene, and the camera will automatically configure the settings for optimal shots.



1 Choose a shooting mode.

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (37) and choose a shooting mode.

2 Shoot.

Shooting Portraits (Portrait)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

- Take shots of people with a softening effect.



Shooting Landscapes (Landscape)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

- Capture wide-open landscapes or similar scenery in sharp focus from near to far, with blue skies and greenery reproduced vividly.



Shooting Close-ups (Close-up)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

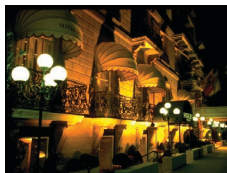
- Take close-ups of flowers or other small objects to enlarge them in your shots.
- To make small things appear much larger, use a macro lens (sold separately).
- Check the minimum focusing distance of the attached lens to determine how close to subjects you can shoot. The lens minimum focusing distance is measured from the $[-\infty]$ (focal plane) mark on the top of the camera to the subject.



Moving Subjects (Sports)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

- Lenses named with “STM” support continuous focus adjustment as you shoot continuously. In continuous shooting with other lenses, the focus is determined initially, when you press the shutter button halfway.



Shooting Evening Scenes without Using a Tripod (Handheld Night Scene)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

- Beautiful shots of evening scenes or portraits with evening scenery in the background, without the need to hold the camera very still (as with a tripod).
- A single image is created by combining consecutive shots, reducing camera shake and image noise.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



- Subjects appear larger in  mode compared to other modes.
- In  and  mode, shots may look grainy because the ISO speed () is increased to suit the shooting conditions.
- Because the camera will shoot continuously in  mode, hold it steady while shooting.
- In  mode, excessive motion blur or certain shooting conditions may prevent you from obtaining the desired results.

- When you use a tripod for evening scenes, shooting in [A+] mode instead of [P] mode will give better results (p. 35).

Applying Special Effects

Add a variety of effects to images when shooting.

Enhancing Colors in Shots of Food (Food)

▶ **Still Images** ▶ **Movies**

Adjust color tones to make food look fresh and vibrant.



- 1 Choose .
- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” ( 37) and choose .

- 2 **Change the color tone.**
 - Turn the [] dial to adjust the color tone.

- ### 3 Shoot.

- ! These color tones may not look suitable when applied to people.
- In flash shots, color tones are automatically set to the default setting.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

**Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode**

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shooting High-Contrast Scenes (High Dynamic Range)

► Still Images ► Movies

Three consecutive images are captured at different brightness levels each time you shoot, and the camera combines image areas with optimal brightness to create a single image. This mode can reduce the washed-out highlights and loss of detail in shadows that tend to occur in high-contrast shots.

1 Choose [HDR].

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (📖 37) and choose [HDR].



2 Shoot.

- Hold the camera steady as you shoot. When you press the shutter button all the way down, the camera will take three shots and combine them.



- Excessive motion blur or certain shooting conditions may prevent you from obtaining the desired results.



- If excessive camera shake interferes with shooting, mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to keep it still. In this case, also disable image stabilization (📖 79).
- Any subject movement will cause images to look blurry.
- There will be a delay before you can shoot again, as the camera processes and combines the images.

Adding Artistic Effects



- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (📖 37) and choose [HDR].
- Turn the [🌞] dial to choose an effect.
- A preview is shown of how your shot will look with the effect applied.

Natural	Images are natural and organic.
Art Standard	Images resemble paintings, with subdued contrast.
Art Vivid	Images resemble vivid illustrations.
Art Bold	Images resemble oil paintings, with bold edges.
Art Embossed	Images resemble old photos, with bold edges and dark ambiance.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shooting with a Fish-Eye Lens Effect (Fish-Eye Effect)

► Still Images ► Movies

Shoot with the distorting effect of a fish-eye lens.

1 Choose [📷].

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (📖37) and choose [📷].



2 Choose an effect level.

- Turn the [🌞] dial to choose an effect level.
- A preview is shown of how your shot will look with the effect applied.

3 Shoot.



- Try taking some test shots first, to make sure you obtain the desired results.

Shots Resembling Oil Paintings (Art Bold Effect)

► Still Images ► Movies

Make subjects look more substantial, like subjects in oil paintings.

1 Choose [🎨].

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (📖37) and choose [🎨].



2 Choose an effect level.

- Turn the [🌞] dial to choose an effect level.
- A preview is shown of how your shot will look with the effect applied.

3 Shoot.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shots Resembling Watercolors (Water Painting Effect)

► Still Images ► Movies

Soften colors, for photos resembling watercolor paintings.

1 Choose [🎨].

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (📖 37) and choose [🎨].



2 Choose an effect level.

- Turn the [🌓] dial to choose an effect level.
- A preview is shown of how your shot will look with the effect applied.

3 Shoot.

Shots Resembling Miniature Models (Miniature Effect)

► Still Images ► Movies

Creates the effect of a miniature model, by blurring image areas above and below your selected area.

You can also make movies that look like scenes in miniature models by choosing the playback speed before the movie is recorded. People and objects in the scene will move quickly during playback. Note that sound is not recorded.

1 Choose [🏠].

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (📖 37) and choose [🏠].
- A white frame is displayed, indicating the image area that will not be blurred.



2 Choose the area to keep in focus.

- Press the [▼] button.
- Touch [📐] to resize the frame, and press the [▲][▼] buttons to move it.

3 For movies, choose the movie playback speed.

- Turn the [🌓] dial to choose the speed.

4 Return to the shooting screen and shoot.

- Press the [📷] button to return to the shooting screen, and then shoot.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Playback Speed and Estimated Playback Time (for One-Minute Clips)

Speed	Playback Time
5x	Approx. 12 sec.
10x	Approx. 6 sec.
20x	Approx. 3 sec.



- Try taking some test shots first, to make sure you obtain the desired results.



- To switch the orientation of the frame to vertical, press the [◀][▶] buttons in step 2. To move the frame, press the [◀][▶] buttons again. To return the frame to horizontal orientation, press the [▲][▼] buttons.
- Holding the camera vertically will change the orientation of the frame.
- Movie quality varies depending on the video system (139) and still image aspect ratio (45).
 - With [NTSC], movie quality is [HD 29.97P] for an aspect ratio of [16:9] and [HD 29.97P] for an aspect ratio of [4:3].
 - With [PAL], movie quality is [HD 25.00P] for an aspect ratio of [16:9] and [HD 25.00P] for an aspect ratio of [4:3].



- You can also move the frame by touching or dragging across the screen.

Shooting with a Toy Camera Effect (Toy Camera Effect)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

This effect makes images resemble shots from a toy camera by vignetting (darker, blurred image corners) and changing the overall color.

1 Choose [📷].

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (37) and choose [📷].



2 Choose a color tone.

- Turn the [🌈] dial to choose a color tone.
- A preview is shown of how your shot will look with the effect applied.

3 Shoot.

Standard	Shots resemble toy camera images.
Warm	Images have a warmer tone than with [Standard].
Cool	Images have a cooler tone than with [Standard].



- Try taking some test shots first, to make sure you obtain the desired results.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shooting with a Soft Focus Effect

► Still Images ► Movies

This function allows you to shoot images as if a soft focus filter were attached to the camera. You can adjust the effect level as desired.

1 Choose [E].

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (37) and choose [E].



2 Choose an effect level.

- Turn the [E] dial to choose an effect level.
- A preview is shown of how your shot will look with the effect applied.

3 Shoot.



- Try taking some test shots first, to make sure you obtain the desired results.

Shooting in Monochrome (Grainy B/W)

► Still Images ► Movies

Take monochrome pictures with a gritty, rough feeling.

1 Choose [E].

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (37) and choose [E].



2 Choose an effect level.

- Turn the [E] dial to choose an effect level.
- A preview is shown of how your shot will look with the effect applied.

3 Shoot.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



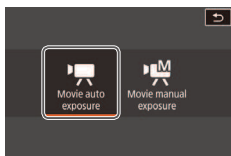
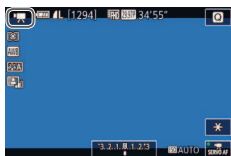
Recording Movies in Movie Mode

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies



1 Enter [M] mode.

- Set the mode switch to [M].
- Black bars displayed on the top and bottom edges of the screen indicate image areas not recorded.
- Touch [M], turn the [S] dial to choose [M], and then touch [M].
- To confirm your choice, touch [OK].



2 Configure the settings to suit the movie (p170).

3 Shoot.

- Press the movie button.
- To stop movie recording, press the movie button again.

- The display area narrows and subjects are enlarged in [M] mode with a Dynamic IS-compatible lens attached (p80).

- To switch between recording with auto focus and a fixed focus, touch [SERVO AF] on the screen before or during recording. (Auto focus is indicated by a green [O] in the upper left of the [SERVO AF] icon.) Note that this icon is not displayed when [Movie Servo AF] (p38) is set to [Disable] on the [5] tab of the menu.

Shooting Still Images during Movie Recording

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Shoot still images during movie recording as follows.



1 While shooting a movie, focus on a subject.

- Press the shutter button halfway to readjust the focus and exposure. (The camera will not beep.)
- Movie recording will continue.

2 Shoot.

- Press the shutter button all the way down.
- Your shot will be recorded.

- Shooting still images during movie recording may not be possible when the memory card's recording speed is slow, or when there is not enough free internal memory.
- Shutter sounds are recorded in movies.
- If the camera cannot focus on subjects when you press the shutter button halfway, an orange AF frame is displayed with [O], and no picture is taken if you press the shutter button all the way down.
- The flash does not fire.
- Movie recording may stop if shooting still images fills up the internal memory.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- To deactivate focusing during recording when the shutter button is pressed halfway, choose MENU (32) > [5] tab > [AF w/ shutter button during] > [Disable].
- During recording of [HD 29.97P], [HD 23.98P], [HD 59.94P], [HD 25.00P] or [HD 50.00P] movies (with an aspect ratio of 16:9), still images will have an aspect ratio of [16:9].
- During recording of [VGA 29.97P] or [VGA 25.00P] movies (with an aspect ratio of 4:3), still images will have an aspect ratio of [4:3].

Locking or Changing Image Brightness before Recording

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

You can lock the exposure before or during recording or adjust it in 1/3-stop increments within a range of -3 to +3 stops.



- Press the [◀] button to lock the exposure. To unlock the exposure, press the [▶] button again.
- Press the [▲] button. As you watch the screen, turn the [Sun] dial to adjust exposure.



- You can also lock or unlock the exposure by touching [✱].
- During recording, you can also adjust exposure by touching the exposure compensation bar on the bottom of the screen and then touching [◀] [▶].

Sound Settings

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Adjusting the Recording Volume

Although the recording level (volume) is automatically adjusted, you can set the level manually to suit the shooting scene.

1 Access the [Sound recording] screen.

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Sound recording] on the [5] tab, and then press the [G] button (32).



2 Configure the setting.

- Choose [Sound recording], press the [G] button, press the [▲][▼] buttons on the next screen to choose [Manual], and then press the [G] button.
- Press the [▼] button to choose [Rec. level], and then press the [G] button. On the next screen, press the [◀][▶] buttons to adjust the level, and then press the [G] button.
- To restore the original setting, repeat this process but choose [Auto].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

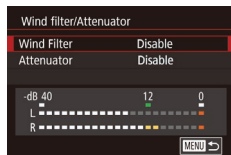
Appendix

Index



Deactivating the Wind Filter

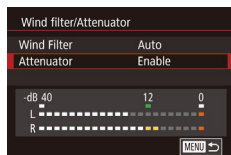
Noise caused by strong wind can be reduced. However, the recording may sound unnatural when this option is used when there is no wind. In this case, you can deactivate the wind filter.



- Access the [Sound recording] screen as described in step 1 of "Adjusting the Recording Volume" (60).
- Choose [Wind filter/Attenuator], and then press the [] button.
- Choose [Wind Filter], and then choose [Disable].

Using the Attenuator

The attenuator can reduce audio distortion in noisy environments. However, in quiet environments, it lowers the sound-recording level.



- Access the [Sound recording] screen as described in step 1 of "Adjusting the Recording Volume" (60).
- Choose [Wind filter/Attenuator], and then press the [] button.
- Choose [Attenuator], and then choose [Enable].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



P Mode

More discerning shots, in your preferred shooting style



- Instructions in this chapter apply when the mode switch set to and mode to **[P]**.
- [P]**: Program AE; AE: Auto Exposure
- Before using a function introduced in this chapter in modes other than **[P]**, make sure the function is available in that mode (📖170).

Shooting in Program AE ([P] Mode)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

You can customize many function settings to suit your preferred shooting style.



- 1 Enter **[P]** mode.**
 - Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (📖37) and choose **[P]**.
- 2 Customize the settings as desired (📖63 – 📖82), and then shoot.**



- Movies can be recorded in **[P]** mode as well, by pressing the movie button. However, some menu settings (📖31, 📖32) may be automatically adjusted for movie recording.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Setting Up Shooting from a Single Screen

The INFO. Quick Control screen provides convenient, single-screen access to a variety of shooting settings.



1 Access the INFO. Quick Control screen.

- Press the [▼] button a few times to display the INFO. Quick Control screen.

2 Choose a setting to configure.

- To view a description, press the [G] button and choose an item by pressing the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons.
- To adjust a setting, turn the [SUN] dial.
- Touch [↵] to complete the setting.



- The items that are displayed and configurable vary by shooting mode.



- Some settings are configured on another screen that opens when you select the setting and press the [G] button. Items labeled with [INFO.] on the second screen can be configured by pressing the [▼] button. To return to the INFO. Quick Control screen, press the [G] button.



- You can also access setting screens by touching a setting on the INFO. Quick Control screen and then touching the setting again. To return to the INFO. Quick Control screen, touch [↵].
- To close a setting description, touch [X] in the upper right of the description.

Image Brightness (Exposure)

Adjusting Image Brightness (Exposure Compensation)

► Still Images ► Movies

The standard exposure set by the camera can be adjusted in 1/3-stop increments, in a range of -3 to +3.



- Press the [▲] button. As you watch the screen, turn the [SUN] dial to adjust brightness.



- You can also configure this setting by choosing MENU [BOOK] 32 > [CAMERA] tab > [Exposure comp.].



- You can also configure this setting by touching the exposure compensation icon on the bottom of the shooting screen and then touching or dragging the bar displayed, or by touching [-][+].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Locking Image Brightness / Exposure (AE Lock)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Before shooting, you can lock the exposure, or you can specify focus and exposure separately.



1 Lock the exposure.

- Aim the camera at the subject to shoot with the exposure locked, and then press the **[AE-L/AF-L]** button.
- **[*]** is displayed, and the exposure is locked.
- To unlock AE, press the **[AE-L/AF-L]** button again. **[*]** is no longer displayed.

2 Compose the shot and shoot.



- AE: Auto Exposure
- After the exposure is locked, you can adjust the combination of shutter speed and aperture value by turning the **[P/AS]** dial (Program Shift).

Changing the Metering Method

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Adjust the metering method (how brightness is measured) to suit shooting conditions as follows.



- Press the **[METER]** button, choose **[Evaluative]** in the menu, and choose the desired option (31).
- The option you configured is now displayed.

	Evaluative metering	For typical shooting conditions, including backlit shots. Maintains standard exposure of subjects through automatic adjustments to match the shooting conditions.
	Partial metering	Effective when the background is much brighter than the subject due to backlighting, etc. Metering is restricted to within the circular metering frame in the center of the screen.
	Spot metering	This is for metering a specific spot of the subject or scene. Metering is restricted to within the circular spot metering frame in the center of the screen.
	Center-weighted average	Determines the average brightness of light across the entire image area, calculated by treating brightness in the central area as more important.



- With **[Evaluative]**, the exposure is locked at the level determined when you press the shutter button halfway. With **[Partial]**, **[Spot]**, or **[Center-weighted average]**, the exposure is not locked then but determined the moment you shoot.
- You can also configure this setting by choosing **MENU** (32) > **[METER]** tab > **[Metering mode]**.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Changing the ISO Speed

► Still Images ► Movies

Set the ISO speed to [AUTO] for automatic adjustment to suit the shooting mode and conditions. Otherwise, set a higher ISO speed for higher sensitivity, or a lower value for lower sensitivity.



- Touch [ISO], choose the ISO speed (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [ISO] dial), and then press the [OK] button.
- The option you configured is now displayed.



- Although choosing a lower ISO speed may reduce image graininess, there may be a greater risk of subject and camera shake in some shooting conditions.
- Choosing a higher ISO speed will increase shutter speed, which may reduce subject and camera shake and increase the flash range. However, shots may look grainy.
- You can also set the ISO speed by accessing MENU (📖32) > [CAM3] tab > [ISO speed] > [ISO Speed].
- To select speeds up to [H] (equivalent to ISO 25600), choose MENU (📖32) > [CAM1] tab > [C.Fn I: Exposure] > [ISO expansion] > [1:On] (📖89).



- You can also configure this setting by touching or dragging the bar on the setting screen, or by touching [◀][▶].

Adjusting ISO Auto Settings

► Still Images ► Movies

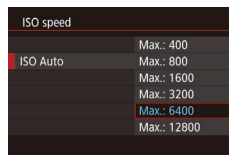
You can limit the ISO speed when ISO speed is set to [AUTO].

1 Access the setting screen.

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [ISO speed] on the [CAM3] tab, and then press the [OK] button (📖32).

2 Configure the setting.

- Choose [ISO Auto], and then choose an option (📖32).



Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

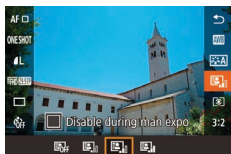
Index



Auto Correction of Brightness and Contrast (Auto Lighting Optimizer)

► Still Images ► Movies

Correct brightness and contrast automatically to avoid images that are too dark or lack contrast.



- Press the button, choose in the menu, and choose the desired option (31).



- This feature may increase noise under some shooting conditions.
- When the effect of Auto Lighting Optimizer is too strong and images become too bright, set it to [Low] or [Disable].
- Images may still be bright or the effect of exposure compensation may be weak under a setting other than [Disable] if you use a darker setting for exposure compensation or flash exposure compensation. For shots at your specified brightness, set this feature to [Disable].

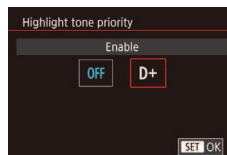


- You can also configure this setting by choosing MENU (32) > 3 tab > [Auto Lighting Optimizer].

Shooting Bright Subjects (Highlight Tone Priority)

► Still Images ► Movies

Improve gradation in bright image areas to avoid loss of detail in subject highlights.



- Press the **[MENU]** button, choose [Highlight tone priority] on the 3 tab, and then choose [D+] (32).



- With [D+], an ISO speed of 100 is not available. Auto Lighting Optimizer is also disabled, in this case.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Image Colors

Adjusting White Balance

► Still Images ► Movies

By adjusting white balance (WB), you can make image colors look more natural for the scene you are shooting.



- Press the **[WB]** button, choose **[AWB]** in the menu, and choose the desired option (p31).
- The option you configured is now displayed.

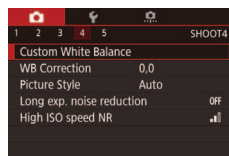
[AWB] Auto	Automatically sets the optimal white balance for the shooting conditions.
Day Light	For shooting outdoors in fair weather.
Shade	For shooting in the shade.
Cloudy	For shooting in cloudy weather or at dusk.
Tungsten light	For shooting under ordinary incandescent lighting.
White fluorescent light	For shooting under white fluorescent lighting.
Flash	For shooting with the flash.
Custom	For manually setting a custom white balance.

Custom White Balance

For image colors that look natural under the light in your shot, adjust white balance to suit the light source where you are shooting. Set the white balance under the same light source that will illuminate your shot.

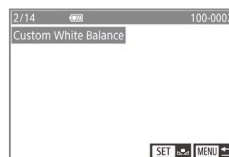
1 Shoot a white object.

- Aim the camera at a sheet of paper or other plain white subject, so that white fills the screen.
- Focus manually and shoot (p75).



2 Choose [Custom White Balance].

- Choose [Custom White Balance] on the **[CAMERA]** tab, and then press the **[WB]** button.
- The custom white balance selection screen will appear.



3 Load the white data.

- Select your image from step 1, and then press **[WB]**.
- On the confirmation screen, press the **[OK]** button to choose **[OK]**, press the **[WB]** button, and then press the **[WB]** button again.
- Press the **[MENU]** button to close the menu.

4 Choose **[WB]**.

- Follow the steps in “Adjusting White Balance” (p67) to choose **[WB]**.



Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- Shots in step 1 that are too bright or dark may prevent you from setting the white balance correctly.
- A message is displayed if you specify an image in step 3 that is not suitable for loading white data. Choose [Cancel] to choose a different image. Choose [OK] to use that image for loading white data, but note that it may not produce a suitable white balance.
- If [Unselectable image.] is displayed in step 3, choose [OK] to clear the message and specify another image.
- If [Set WB to "M"] is displayed in step 3, press the [WB] button to return to the menu screen, and then choose [M].



- Instead of a white object, a gray chart or 18% gray reflector (commercially available) can produce a more accurate white balance.
- The current white balance and related settings are disregarded when you shoot in step 1.

Manually Correcting White Balance

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

You can manually correct white balance. This adjustment can match the effect of using a commercially available color temperature conversion filter or color-compensating filter.



1 Configure the setting.

- Follow the steps in "Adjusting White Balance" (67) to choose the white balance option.
- Turn the [WB] dial to adjust the correction level for B and A.



2 Configure advanced settings.

- To configure more advanced settings, press the [MENU] button and press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to adjust the correction level.
- To reset the amount of correction, touch [Reset].
- Press the [WB] button to complete the setting.



- Any correction level you set is retained even if you change the white balance option in step 1.



- B: blue; A: amber; M: magenta; G: green
- One level of blue/amber correction is equivalent to about 5 mireds on a color temperature conversion filter. (Mired: Color temperature unit representing color temperature conversion filter density)
- You can also configure this setting by choosing MENU (32) > [4] tab > [WB Correction].



- You can also choose the correction level by touching or dragging the bar in step 1 or the frame in step 2.
- You can also access the screen in step 2 by touching [MENU] in step 1.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

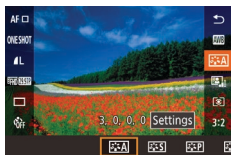
Index



Customizing Colors (Picture Style)

► Still Images ► Movies

Choose a Picture Style with color settings that express moods or subjects well. Seven Picture Styles are available, and each can be further customized.



- Press the button, choose in the menu, and choose the desired option (31).

Auto	The color tone will be adjusted automatically to suit the scene. The colors will look vivid, especially for blue skies, greenery, and sunsets in nature, outdoor, and sunset scenes.
Standard	The image looks vivid, sharp, and crisp. Suitable for most scenes.
Portrait	For smooth skin tones. The image looks softer. Suited for close-up portraits. To modify skin tones, adjust [Color tone] (70).
Landscape	For vivid blues and greens, and very sharp and crisp images. Effective for impressive landscapes.
Neutral	For retouching later on a computer. Natural color tones and a subdued look.
Faithful	For retouching later on a computer. Faithfully reproduces the actual colors of subjects as measured under ambient light with a color temperature of 5200K. Vivid colors are suppressed for a subdued look.
Monochrome	Creates black and white images.



User Def.

Add a new style based on presets such as [Portrait] or [Landscape] or a Picture Style file, and then adjust it as needed (69).



- Default [Auto] settings are used for , , and until you add a Picture Style.
- You can also configure this setting by accessing MENU (32) > tab > [Picture Style].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



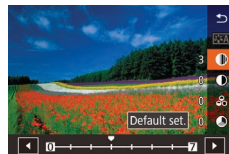
Customizing Picture Styles

Customize these parameters of Picture Styles as needed.

 Sharpness	Adjust the sharpness of subjects. Choose lower values to soften (blur) subjects, or higher values to sharpen them.
 Contrast	Adjust the contrast. Choose lower values to decrease the contrast, or higher values to increase it.
 Saturation* ¹	Adjust the intensity of colors. Choose lower values to make colors faded, or higher values to make them deeper.
 Color tone* ¹	Adjust skin color tone. Choose lower values to produce redder hues, or higher values to produce yellower hues.
 Filter effect* ²	Emphasize white clouds in monochrome images, the green of trees, or other colors. N: Normal black-and-white image with no filter effects. Ye: The blue sky will look more natural, and the white clouds will look crisper. Or: The blue sky will look slightly darker. The sunset will look more brilliant. R: The blue sky will look quite dark. Fall leaves will look crisper and brighter. G: Skin tones and lips will appear muted. Green tree leaves will look crisper and brighter.
 Toning effect* ²	Choose from the following monochrome hues: [N:None], [S:Sepia], [B:Blue], [P:Purple], or [G:Green].

*¹ Not available with .

*² Only available with .



- [Filter effect] results are more noticeable with higher [Contrast] values.

1 Access the setting screen.

- Choose a Picture Style as described in “Customizing Colors (Picture Style)” (p.69).
- Touch [Settings].

2 Configure the setting.

- Press the [][] buttons to choose an item, and then choose an option by pressing the [][] buttons or turning the [] dial.
- To undo any changes, touch [Default set.].
- When finished, press the [] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Saving Customized Picture Styles

Save presets (such as [P1] or [P2]) that you have customized as new styles. You can create several Picture Styles with different settings for parameters such as sharpness or contrast.



1 Select a user-defined style number.

- Choose [P1], [P2], or [P3] as described in “Customizing Colors (Picture Style)” (p.69).



2 Select a style to modify.

- Touch [Detail set].
- Press the [Left] [Right] buttons or turn the [Main] dial to choose the Picture Style that serves as the basis.

3 Customize the style.

- Press the [Up] [Down] buttons to choose an item to modify, and then customize it, either by pressing the [Left] [Right] buttons or turning the [Main] dial.
- When finished, press the [Done] button.



- You can also choose styles in step 2 that you have added to the camera using EOS Utility (p.152).

Focusing

Choosing the AF Method

► Still Images ► Movies

Choose a method of auto focusing (AF) for the subject and scene you are shooting.



- Press the [Menu] button, choose [AF] in the menu, and choose the desired option (p.32).



- Focusing may take longer or be incorrect when subjects are dark or lack contrast, in very bright conditions, or with some EF or EF-S lenses. For lens details, visit the Canon website.



- You can also configure this setting by accessing MENU (p.32) > [Camera] tab > [AF method].

1-point AF

- The camera focuses using a single AF frame. Effective for reliable focusing.
- Frames turn green after you press the shutter button halfway and the camera focuses.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- Move the frame as needed (📖72). To compose shots with subjects on the edge or in a corner without moving the frame, first aim the camera to bring the subject into an AF frame, and then hold the shutter button halfway down. Keep the shutter button halfway down as you recompose the shot, and then press the shutter button all the way down (Focus Lock).
- To magnify the position of the AF frame, follow steps 2 – 4 in “Shooting in Manual Focus Mode” (📖75). Note that Touch Shutter is not available at this time.

📷+Tracking

- After you aim the camera at the subject, a white frame is displayed around the face of the main subject as determined by the camera. You can also choose subjects yourself (📖72).
- When the camera detects movement, frames will follow moving subjects, within a certain range.
- Frames turn green after you press the shutter button halfway and the camera focuses.
- When no faces are detected, pressing the shutter button halfway displays green frames around other areas in focus.



- Examples of faces that cannot be detected:
 - Subjects that are distant or extremely close
 - Subjects that are dark or light
 - Faces in profile, at an angle, or partly hidden
- The camera may misinterpret non-human subjects as faces.
- An orange frame is displayed with [!] if the camera cannot focus on subjects when you press the shutter button halfway.
- Focusing is not possible on faces detected at the edge of the screen (which are displayed with gray frames), even when you press the shutter button halfway.



- The maximum number of frames depends on the aspect ratio (📖45).

Choosing Subjects to Focus On (Touch AF)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

You can shoot after the camera focuses on your selected subject, person's face, or location shown on the screen.



1 Choose a subject, a person's face, or a location to focus on.

- Touch the subject or person on the screen.
- When the AF method is set to [AF □], an AF frame is displayed where you touched.
- When the AF method is set to [AF 📷], [📷] is displayed once a face is detected, and focus is maintained even if the subject moves. To cancel Touch AF, touch [📷].

2 Shoot.

- Press the shutter button halfway. After the camera focuses, [□] is displayed in green.
- Press the shutter button all the way down to shoot.



- If the camera shoots when you touch the screen, either touch [📷] to change it to [📷] or choose MENU (📖32) > [📷1] tab > [Touch Shutter] > [Disable].
- Tracking may not be possible when subjects are too small or move too rapidly, or when there is inadequate contrast between subjects and the background.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



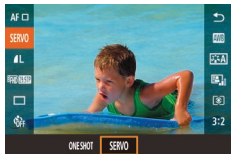


- To return the AF frame to the center in [AF] mode, touch [AF].
- You can also move the AF frame in [AF] mode, by dragging it.

Shooting with Servo AF

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

This mode helps avoid missing shots of subjects in motion, because the camera continues to focus on the subject and adjust the exposure as long as you press the shutter button halfway.



1 Configure the setting.

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [ONE SHOT] in the menu, and then choose [SERVO] (p31).



2 Focus.

- Press the shutter button halfway. After the camera focuses, a green AF frame is displayed.
- The AF frame will turn blue as focus is adjusted if you recompose the shot, or if the subject moves. It is displayed in green again once the subject is in focus.



- The camera may not be able to shoot while focusing, even if you press the shutter button all the way down. A shot can be taken as soon as the subject is in focus, so keep holding down the shutter button as you follow the subject.
- An orange AF frame is displayed when the camera cannot focus on subjects.
- Using the self-timer (p40) will restrict the AF mode to [ONE SHOT].



- Focus remains on the frame in the center of the screen in Servo AF mode if no face is detected when you press the shutter button halfway, even if [L+Tracking] is activated (p72).
- Exposure is not locked in Servo AF mode when you press the shutter button halfway but is determined the moment you shoot, regardless of the metering mode (p64) setting.
- Continuous shooting (p42) with auto focus is possible by using a lens named with "STM" in Servo AF mode. Note that continuous shooting is slower at this time. Also note that focus may be lost if you zoom in or out during continuous shooting.
- With other lenses, the focus is locked after the second shot in continuous shooting, even in Servo AF mode, and continuous shooting is slower.
- Depending on the lens used, the distance to the subject and the subject's speed, the camera may not be able to achieve correct focus.
- You can also configure this setting by accessing MENU (p32) > [CAMERA] tab > [AF operation].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

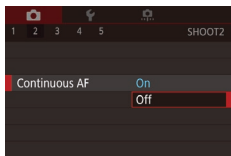
Index



Changing the Focus Setting

► Still Images ► Movies

You can change default camera operation of constantly focusing on subjects it is aimed at, even when the shutter button is not pressed. Instead, you can limit camera focusing to the moment you press the shutter button halfway.



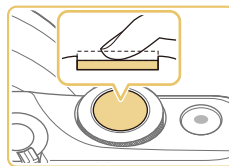
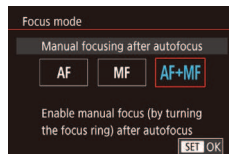
- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Continuous AF] on the [CAMERA] tab, and then choose [Off] (p. 32).

On	Helps avoid missing sudden photo opportunities, because the camera constantly focuses on subjects until you press the shutter button halfway.
Off	Conserves battery power, because the camera does not focus constantly. However, this may delay focusing.

Fine-Tuning the Focus

► Still Images ► Movies

Fine-tune autofocusing with an EF-M lens attached by turning the focusing ring.



1 Configure the setting.

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Focus mode] on the [CAMERA] tab, and then choose [AF+MF] (p. 32).

2 Focus.

- Press the shutter button halfway to focus on the subject, and continue holding the button halfway down.

3 Fine-tune the focus.

- Turn the focusing ring on the lens to adjust the focus.
- [MF] blinks on the screen.
- To cancel focusing, release the shutter button.

4 Shoot.

- Press the shutter button all the way down to shoot.



- Cannot be used with Servo AF (p. 73).
- Not available with lenses other than EF-M lenses.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

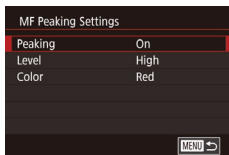
Index



Easily Identifying the Focus Area (MF Peaking)

► Still Images ► Movies

Edges of subjects in focus are displayed in color to make manual focusing easier. You can adjust the colors and the sensitivity (level) of edge detection as needed.



1 Access the setting screen.

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [MF Peaking Settings] on the [1/2] tab, and then set [Peaking] to [On] (132).

2 Configure the setting.

- Choose a menu item to configure, and then choose the desired option (132).



- Colors displayed for MF peaking are not recorded in your shots.

Flash

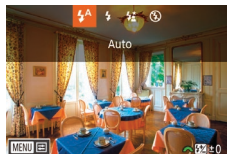
Changing the Flash Mode

► Still Images ► Movies

You can change the flash mode to match the shooting scene. For details on the flash range, see “Approximate Built-in Flash Range” (190).

1 Raise the flash.

- Move the [] switch.



2 Configure the setting.

- Press the [] button, press the []/[] buttons to choose a flash mode, and then press the [] button.
- The option you configured is now displayed.



- The setting screen cannot be accessed by pressing the [] button when the flash is lowered. Move the [] switch to raise the flash, then configure the setting.
- If the flash fires, vignetting may occur. Vignetting or dark image areas may also occur, if the flash fires, depending on the lens.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- When there is a risk of overexposure, the camera automatically adjusts the shutter speed or ISO speed for flash shots to reduce washed-out highlights and shoot at optimal exposure. Thus, shutter speeds and ISO speeds displayed when you press the shutter button halfway may not match the settings in flash shots.
- You can also configure this setting by choosing MENU (32) > [3] tab > [Flash Control] > [Flash firing].

Auto

Fires automatically in low-light conditions.

On

Fires for each shot.

Slow Synchro

Fires to illuminate the main subject (such as people) while shooting at a slower shutter speed to illuminate backgrounds out of flash range.



- In [4] mode, mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to keep it still and prevent camera shake. In this case, also disable image stabilization (79).
- In [4] mode, even after the flash fires, ensure that the main subject does not move until the shutter sound is finished playing.

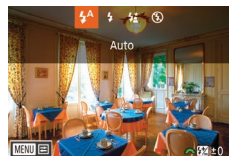
Off

For shooting without the flash.

Adjusting the Flash Exposure Compensation

► Still Images ► Movies

Just as with regular exposure compensation (63), you can adjust the flash exposure from -2 to +2 stops, in 1/3-stop increments.



- Raise the flash, press the [▶] button and immediately turn the [FEC] dial to choose the compensation level, and then press the [OK] button.
- The correction level you specified is now displayed.



- You can also configure the flash exposure compensation by accessing MENU (32) and choosing [3] tab > [Flash Control] > [Built-in flash settings] > [exp. comp.].
- You can also access the [Flash Control] screen (32) when the flash is up by pressing the [▶] button and immediately pressing the [MENU] button.



- You can also access the [Flash Control] screen (32) by pressing the [▶] button and touching [MENU].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shooting with the FE Lock

► Still Images ► Movies

Just as with the AE lock (📖64), you can lock the exposure for flash shots.

1 Raise the flash and set it to [🔧] (📖76).

2 Lock the flash exposure.

- Aim the camera at the subject to shoot with the exposure locked, and then press the [🔑] button.
- The flash fires, and when [🔧*] is displayed, the flash output level is retained.
- To unlock FE, press the [🔑] button again. [🔧*] is no longer displayed.

3 Compose the shot and shoot.

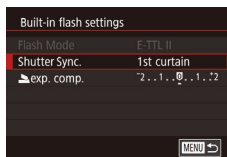


- FE: Flash Exposure
- The metering range is shown by a circle in the center of the screen when FE is locked.
- [🔧*] blinks when standard exposure is not possible (even if the flash fires in step 2). Follow step 2 when subjects are within range for flash shots.

Changing the Flash Timing

► Still Images ► Movies

Change the timing of the flash and shutter release as follows.



- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Flash Control] on the [📷3] tab, and then choose [Built-in flash settings].
- Choose [Shutter Sync.], and then choose the desired option (📖32).

1st curtain	The flash fires immediately after the shutter opens.
2nd curtain	The flash fires immediately before the shutter closes.

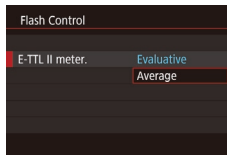


- [1st curtain] is used whenever the shutter speed is 1/100 or faster, even if you select [2nd curtain].

Changing the Flash Metering Mode

► Still Images ► Movies

[Evaluative] flash metering, which enables standard flash exposure, can be changed to average flash metering across the metering area, as when using an externally metered flash.



- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Flash Control] on the [📷3] tab. Choose [E-TTL II meter.] and then [Average].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- When using [Average], adjust flash exposure compensation to suit the shooting conditions.

Resetting Flash Settings

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Reset [Built-in flash settings] to the default values.

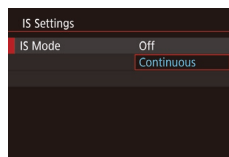
- Press the **[MENU]** button, choose [Flash Control] on the **[3]** tab, and then choose [Clear settings].
- Press the **[◀][▶]** buttons to choose [OK], and then press the **[G]** button.

Other Settings

Changing the IS Mode Settings

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Configure image stabilization via the camera menu when using an EF-M lens with image stabilization.



1 Access the setting screen.

- Press the **[MENU]** button, choose [IS Settings] on the **[2]** tab, and then press the **[G]** button (32).

2 Configure the setting.

- Choose [IS Mode], and then choose the desired option (32).

Continuous	Corrects camera movement or camera shake using built-in image stabilization performed by the lens.
Off	Deactivates image stabilization.



- If image stabilization cannot prevent camera shake, mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to hold it still. In this case, set [IS Mode] to [Off].
- [IS Mode] is not displayed for lenses other than EF-M lenses. Use the image stabilization switch on the lens instead (24).



- Lenses with built-in image stabilization are named with "IS". IS stands for Image Stabilizer.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

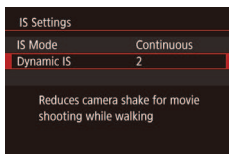
Index



Recording Movies with Subjects at the Same Size Shown before Shooting

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Normally, once movie recording begins, the image display area changes and subjects are enlarged to allow for correction of significant camera shake. To shoot subjects at the same size shown before shooting, you can choose not to reduce significant camera shake.



- Follow the steps in “Changing the IS Mode Settings” (📖79) to access the [IS Settings] screen.
- Choose [Dynamic IS], and then choose [2] (📖32).

! [Dynamic IS] is displayed only for lenses supporting this feature.

✎ You can also set [IS Mode] to [Off], so that subjects are recorded at the same size shown before shooting.

Correcting Lens Vignetting / Chromatic Aberration

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

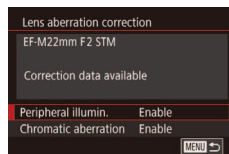
Correct both vignetting and color fringing around subjects due to lens characteristics.

Correction values for 30 lenses are already on the camera, and you can use EOS Utility to check these and add data for other lenses, as needed. For details, refer to the EOS Utility instruction manual (📖152).

* Note that there is no need to add EF-M lenses.

1 Choose [Lens aberration correction].

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Lens correction data] on the [📷2] tab, and then choose an item (📖32).



2 Confirm that correction data is available.

- Make sure [Correction data available] is displayed under the lens name.

3 Apply correction.

- Choose an item and press the [📷] button to apply the setting (📖31).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- Peripheral illumination correction and chromatic aberration correction cannot be applied to JPEG images already taken.
- When using a non-Canon lens, setting the corrections to [Disable] is recommended, even if [Correction data available] is displayed.
- To correct RAW images, use Digital Photo Professional (152).
- Noise may occur around the edges of images shot under some conditions if you set [Peripheral illumin.] to [Enable].
- The camera cannot be used to check the effect of correcting chromatic aberration in RAW images. Instead, use Digital Photo Professional (152) to check.

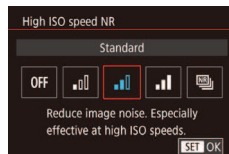


- Your settings are retained even after you change lenses, but images are not corrected unless the camera has correction data for the new lens. If [Correction data not available] is displayed in step 2, use EOS Utility (152) to add lens correction data to the camera.
- If the effect of the correction is not visible, magnify the image and check it again.
- The corrections are also applied when an Extender or Life-size Converter is attached.
- If the lens does not have distance information, the correction amount will be lower.
- The amount of peripheral illumination correction is slightly less than the maximum in Digital Photo Professional.
- The higher the ISO speed, the lower the amount of peripheral illumination correction.

Changing the Noise Reduction Level

► Still Images ► Movies

You can choose from 3 levels of noise reduction: [Standard], [High], [Low]. This function is especially effective when shooting at high ISO speeds.



- Press the [MENU] button, choose [High ISO speed NR] on the [4] tab, and then choose the desired option (32).

Using Multi Shot Noise Reduction

Automatically combine four images captured at once for noise reduction superior to the [High] option in [High ISO speed NR].

- 1 Choose [NR].**
 - Follow the steps in “Changing the Noise Reduction Level” to choose [NR].
- 2 Shoot.**
 - Hold the camera steady as you shoot. When you press the shutter button all the way down, the camera will take four shots and combine them.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



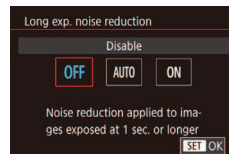


- Unexpected results may occur if images are quite misaligned (from camera shake, for example). Mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to keep it still, if possible.
- If you shoot a moving subject, the subject's movement may leave afterimages or the surrounding area of the subject may become dark.
- Depending on shooting conditions, noise may appear on the image periphery.
- Not available with [Long exp. noise reduction] or when shooting RAW images. Setting up these features will prevent you from using [Multi Shot Noise Reduction].
- Flash shooting is not possible.
- Recording the image to the card will take longer than with normal shooting. You cannot take another shot until processing is finished.

Reducing Noise at Slow Shutter Speeds

► Still Images ► Movies

Reduce noise from long exposures at shutter speeds of one second or slower.



- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Long exp. noise reduction] on the [4] tab, and then choose an option (32).

OFF	Disables noise reduction for long exposures.
AUTO	Applies noise reduction if the noise that tends to occur in long exposures at shutter speeds of one second or slower is detected.
ON	Always applies noise reduction at shutter speeds of one second or slower.



- There may be a delay before you can shoot again, as the camera reduces noise in images.
- Images shot at speeds of ISO 1600 or higher may be grainier with this option set to [ON] than at [OFF] or [AUTO].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Tv, Av, and M Mode

Take smarter, more sophisticated shots



- Instructions in this chapter apply to respective shooting modes, when the mode switch is set to [📷].

Specific Shutter Speeds ([Tv] Mode)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Set your preferred shutter speed before shooting as follows. The camera automatically adjusts the aperture value to suit your shutter speed.

For details on available shutter speeds, see “Shutter” (📖185).



1 Enter [Tv] mode.

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (📖37) and choose [Tv].

2 Set the shutter speed.

- Turn the [🔧] dial to set the shutter speed.



- There may be a delay before you can shoot again when [Long exp. noise reduction] is set to [ON] or [AUTO] and the shutter speed is 1 second or slower, because images are processed to remove noise.
- We recommend deactivating image stabilization when shooting at slow shutter speeds on a tripod (📖79).
- Maximum shutter speed with the flash is 1/200 second. If you specify a faster speed, the camera will automatically reset the speed to 1/200 second before shooting.
- Orange display of the aperture value when you press the shutter button halfway indicates that the standard exposure has not been obtained. Adjust the shutter speed until the aperture value is displayed in white, or use safety shift (📖88).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

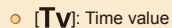
Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





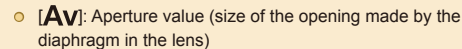
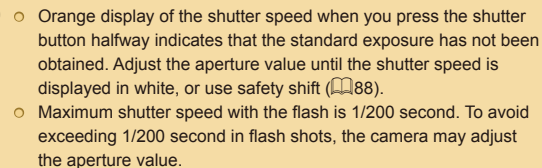
▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Available aperture values vary by lens.



- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (📖 37) and choose [**Av**].

- Turn the dial to set the aperture value.



Index



Depth-of-Field Preview

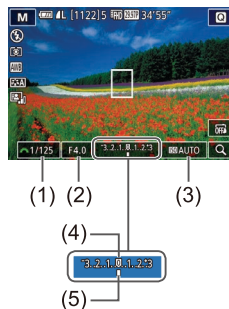
The aperture changes only at the moment you shoot, and it remains open at other times. For this reason, the depth of field shown on the screen looks narrow, or shallow. To check the actual depth of field, assign [Depth-of-field preview] to the movie button (📖90) and press it.

Specific Shutter Speeds and Aperture Values ([M] Mode)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Follow these steps before shooting to set your preferred shutter speed and aperture value to obtain the desired exposure.

For details on available shutter speeds, see “Shutter” (📖185). Available aperture values vary by lens.



1 Enter [M] mode.

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting in Hybrid Auto Mode” (📖37) and choose [M].

2 Configure the setting.

- Press the [▲] button, choose adjustment of shutter speed (1) or aperture value (2), and when [⚙️] is displayed, turn the [⚙️] dial to set a value.
- Touch [ISO AUTO] and either touch/drag the bar or touch [◀] [▶] to set the ISO speed (3).
- When the ISO speed is fixed, an exposure level mark (5) based on your specified values is shown on the exposure level indicator for comparison to the standard exposure level (4). The exposure level mark is shown as [◀] or [▶] when the difference from standard exposure exceeds 3 stops.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



- The ISO speed is determined and screen brightness changes when you press the shutter button halfway after setting the ISO speed to [AUTO]. If standard exposure cannot be obtained with your specified shutter speed and aperture value, the ISO speed is displayed in orange.



- After you set the shutter speed and aperture value, the exposure level may change if you adjust the zoom or recompose the shot.
- When the ISO speed is fixed, screen brightness may change depending on your specified shutter speed and aperture value. However, screen brightness remains the same when the flash is up and the mode is set to [⚡].
- Image brightness may be affected by the Auto Lighting Optimizer (book 66). To keep the Auto Lighting Optimizer disabled in [M] mode, touch [] on the Auto Lighting Optimizer setting screen to add a [✓] mark to [Disable during man expo].



- [M]: Manual
- Calculation of standard exposure is based on the specified metering method (book 64).
- The following operations are available when ISO speed is set to [AUTO].
 - ▀ Turn the [] dial when [] is shown on the exposure compensation bar in step 2 to adjust exposure.
 - ▀ Press the [] button to lock the ISO speed. Screen brightness changes accordingly.



- You can also adjust the setting items on the bottom of the screen by touching an item to select it and then either touching/dragging the bar or touching [] [] [].

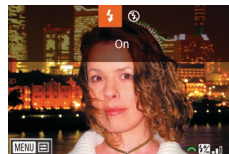
Adjusting the Flash Output

► Still Images ► Movies

Choose from the three flash levels in [Tv][Av][M] modes.

1 Set the flash mode to [Manual flash].

- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Flash Control] on the [] tab. In [Built-in flash settings], set [Flash Mode] to [Manual flash] (book 32).



2 Configure the setting.

- Raise the flash, press the [] button and immediately turn the [] dial to choose the flash level, and then press the [] button.
- Once the setting is complete, the flash output level is displayed.
[]: Minimum, []: Medium, []: Maximum



- You can also set the flash level by accessing MENU (book 32) and choosing [] tab > [Flash Control] > [Built-in flash settings] > [] flash output[].
- You can also access the [Flash Control] screen (book 32) when the flash is up by pressing the [] button and immediately pressing the [MENU] button.



- You can also access the [Flash Control] screen (book 32) by pressing the [] button and touching [MENU].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Recording Movies at Specific Shutter Speeds and Aperture Values

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Set your preferred shutter speed, aperture value, exposure, and ISO speed. For details on available shutter speeds, see “Shutter” (185). Available aperture values vary by lens.

1 Enter [M] mode.

- Follow step 1 in “Shooting Movies in Movie Mode” (59) and choose [M].



2 Configure the setting.

- Press the [▲] button to choose an item to configure, and then turn the [DIAL] dial to set a value.



- Some shutter speeds may cause flickering on the screen when recording under fluorescent or LED lighting, which may be recorded.
- Large aperture values may delay or prevent accurate focusing.



- When the ISO speed is fixed, an exposure level mark based on your specified value is shown on the exposure level indicator for comparison to the standard exposure level. The exposure level mark is shown as [◀] or [▶] when the difference from standard exposure exceeds 3 stops.
- The ISO speed is determined and screen brightness changes when you press the shutter button halfway after setting the ISO speed to [AUTO]. If standard exposure cannot be obtained with your specified shutter speed and aperture value, the ISO speed is displayed in orange.



- You can also adjust the setting items on the bottom of the screen by touching an item to select it and then either touching/dragging the bar or touching [◀] [▶].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

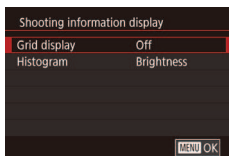


Customizing Controls and Display

Customizing Display Information

► Still Images ► Movies

Customize what screen is displayed when you press the [▼] button on the shooting screen.



1 Access the setting screen.

- Choose [Shooting information display] on the [1] tab, and then press the [G] button (32).

2 Configure the setting.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose a display item, and then press the [G] button. Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an option, and then press the [G] button.



- To make the grid pattern smaller, choose [Shooting information display] > [Grid display].
- To switch from a brightness histogram to an RGB histogram, choose [Shooting information display] > [Histogram].

Configuring Custom Functions

► Still Images ► Movies

Configure custom functions on the [1] tab of the menu (32) to customize how the camera works to suit your shooting preferences. You can also assign commonly used functions to specific buttons.



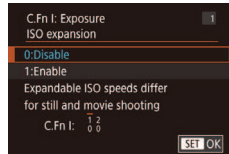
1 Choose the type of function to customize.

- Press the [MENU] button and choose the [1] tab (32).
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose a type of function ([Exposure], [Autofocus], or [Others]), and then press the [G] button.



2 Choose the function.

- [Exposure] or [Others]: Choose the function (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [SUN] dial), and then press the [G] button.



3 Choose an option.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an option.
- When finished, press the [G] button to return to the previous screen.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Type of Function	Function	Description
Exposure	ISO expansion	Set to [1:Enable] for the option of setting the ISO speed to [H]. [H] corresponds to ISO 25600, or in [P] mode, ISO 12800.
	Safety shift	Set to [1:Enable] for automatic adjustment of the shutter speed and aperture value to bring the exposure level closer to standard exposure if standard exposure would not be available otherwise under your specified shutter speed or aperture value in [Tv] or [Av] mode.
Autofocus	AF-assist beam (LED) firing	Set to [1:Disable] to disable the AF-assist beam.
Others	Custom Controls	Assign commonly used functions to specific buttons (90).
	Release shutter w/o lens	Set to [1:Enable] to enable shooting without a lens attached, either by pressing the shutter button or movie button.
	Retract lens on power off	Specify whether the lens should be retracted automatically when you turn the camera off.



- To cancel all changes on the **[Fn1]** tab and restore defaults, choose [Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)] on the screen in step 1 and press the **[Fn]** button.
- [H] is not available when [Highlight tone priority] is set to [D+] (66), even with [ISO expansion] set to [1:Enable].
- Safety shift is disabled when the flash fires.
- AF-assist beam: Light from the front lamp when the shutter button is pressed halfway in low-light conditions, which assists in focusing.
- Automatic lens retraction when powered off is available for lenses that support this feature.

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Assigning Functions to Buttons

Assign commonly used functions to the shutter button, [L] ([X]) button), or movie button.

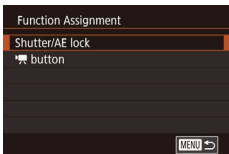


1 Access the screen for assigning functions.

- Follow step 1 in “Configuring Custom Functions” (p.88) and choose [Custom Controls] in [Others].

2 Assign the function.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the button to assign, and then press the [OK] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the function.
- When finished, press the [OK] button to return to the previous screen.



Shutter button	Set to [AE/AF, no AE lock] to enable focusing by pressing the [L] button. Note that this disables the normal [L] button function of locking AE. Also note that with Touch Shutter, the camera will not adjust the focus before shooting.
[L] ([X]) button	
Movie button	Press the button to activate the assigned function.



- To restore the default setting to the movie button, choose [Movies].
- If you prefer not to assign any functions to the movie button, choose [Not Assigned].
- To preview the depth of field with your specified aperture value as you hold down a button, assign [Depth-of-field preview] to the button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Playback Mode

Have fun reviewing your shots, and browse or edit them in many ways

- To prepare the camera for these operations, press the [▶] button to enter Playback mode.



- It may not be possible to play back or edit images that were renamed or already edited on a computer, or images from other cameras.

Viewing

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

After shooting images or movies, you can view them on the screen as follows.



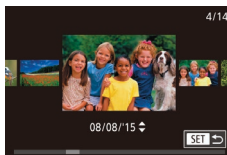
1 Enter Playback mode.

- Press the [▶] button.
- Your last shot is displayed.



2 Choose images.

- To view the previous image, press the [◀] button. To view the next image, press the [▶] button.
- Press and hold the [◀][▶] buttons to browse through images quickly.



- To access this screen (Scroll Display mode), press and hold the [◀][▶] buttons for at least one second. In this mode, press the [◀][▶] buttons to browse through images.
- To return to single-image display, press the [⏏] button.
- To browse images grouped by shooting date, press the [▲][▼] buttons in Scroll Display mode.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- Movies are identified by a [SET ▶] icon. To play movies, go to step 3.



3 Play movies.

- To start playback, press the [⏻] button, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [▶], and then press the [⏻] button again.



(1)

4 Adjust the volume.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to adjust the volume.
- To adjust the volume when the volume indicator (1) is no longer displayed, press the [▲][▼] buttons.

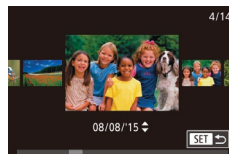
5 Pause playback.

- To pause or resume playback, press the [⏻] button.
- After the movie is finished, [SET ▶] is displayed.



- To switch to Shooting mode from Playback mode, press the shutter button halfway.
- To deactivate Scroll Display, choose MENU (91) > [▶] 3 tab > [Scroll Display] > [Off].
- To have the most recent shot displayed when you enter Playback mode, choose MENU (91) > [▶] 3 tab > [Resume] > [Last shot].
- To change the transition shown between images, access MENU (91) and choose your desired effect on the [▶] 3 tab > [Transition Effect].

Touch-Screen Operations



- To view the next image, drag left across the screen, and to view the previous image, drag right.

- To access Scroll Display mode, quickly drag left or right repeatedly.
- You can also browse through images in Scroll Display mode by dragging left or right.
- Touching the central image will restore single-image display.
- To browse images grouped by shooting date in Scroll Display mode, quickly drag up or down.
- To start movie playback, touch [▶] in step 2 of "Viewing" (91).
- To adjust the volume during movie playback, quickly drag up or down across the screen.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

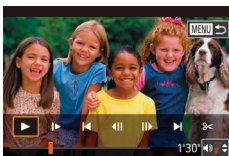
Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- To stop movie playback, touch the screen. The screen shown here is displayed, and the camera is ready for your next operation.
 - Touch [🔊] to display the volume panel, and then touch [▲][▼] to adjust the volume.
 - To switch frames, touch the scrollbar or drag left or right.
 - To resume playback, touch [▶].
 - Touch [↶] to return to the screen in step 2 of “Viewing” (p.91).

Switching Display Modes

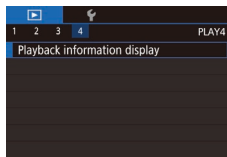
Press the [▼] button in Playback mode to switch from “no info display” to “info display 1” (basic info) to “info display 2” (details).



- Switching display modes is not possible while the camera is connected via Wi-Fi to devices other than printers.

Customizing the Shooting Information Displayed

Customize the information shown on each screen. For details on the information available, see “During Playback” (p.168).



1 Access the setting screen.

- Choose [Playback information display] on the [4] tab, and then press the [ⓘ] button.



2 Choose information to display.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose information to display, and then press the [ⓘ] button to add a [✓] mark.
- To return to the menu screen, press the [MENU] button.



- An example of display with the options selected in step 2 is shown at left for reference.
- To display [ⓘ] mode setting details, add a [✓] mark to [Info display 2]. This setting information, followed by [Info display 2], will be displayed when you press the [▼] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



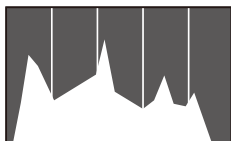
Overexposure Warning (for Image Highlights)

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Information displays 2 – 6 (📖93) can help you avoid washed-out highlights, which blink as a warning.

Brightness Histogram

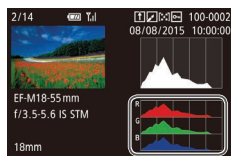
▶ Still Images ▶ Movies



- Information displays 2 – 6 include a graph on the top called a brightness histogram, which shows the distribution of brightness in images. The horizontal axis represents the degree of brightness, and the vertical axis, how much of the image is at each level of brightness. Viewing the histogram is a way to check exposure.

RGB Histogram

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies



- Information display 3 includes an RGB histogram, showing the distribution of reds, greens, and blues in images. The horizontal axis represents R, G, or B brightness, and the vertical axis, how much of the image is at that level of brightness. Viewing this histogram enables you to check image color characteristics.

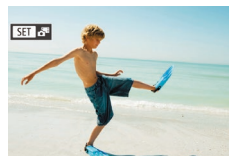


- The histogram can also be accessed while shooting (📖167).

Viewing Short Movies Created When Shooting Still Images (Digest Movies)

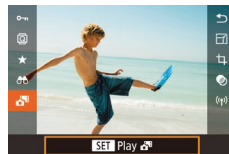
▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

View digest movies recorded automatically in [A] mode (📖37) on a day of still image shooting as follows.



1 Choose an image.

- Choose a still image labeled with [SET] and press the [Q] button.



2 Play the movie.

- Press the [Q] button, and then choose [A] in the menu (📖31).
- The movie recorded automatically on the day of still image shooting is played back, from the beginning.



- After a moment, [SET] will no longer be displayed when you are using the camera with information display deactivated (📖93).



- You can also play digest movies by touching [SET] on the screen in step 1 and touching [SET] on the screen in step 2.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

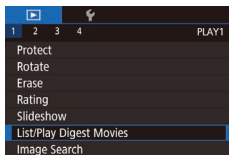
Appendix

Index



Viewing by Date

Digest movies can be viewed by date.



1 Choose a movie.

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [List/Play Digest Movies] on the [1] tab, and then choose a date (32).

2 Play the movie.

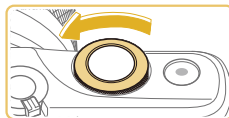
- Press the [G] button to start playback.

Browsing and Filtering Images

Navigating through Images in an Index

► Still Images ► Movies

By displaying multiple images in an index, you can quickly find the images you are looking for.



1 Display images in an index.

- Turn the [mode] dial counterclockwise to display images in an index. To view more images at once, turn the dial again.
- To view fewer images at once, turn the [mode] dial clockwise. Fewer images are shown each time you turn the dial.



2 Choose an image.

- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to scroll through images and choose one.
- An orange frame is displayed around the selected image.
- Press the [G] button to view the selected image in single-image display.



- To deactivate the 3D display effect (shown if you hold down the [▲][▼] buttons), choose MENU (32) > [1] 3 tab > [Index Effect] > [Off].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Touch-Screen Operations



- Pinch in to switch from single-image display to index display.
- To view more thumbnails per screen, pinch in again.
- Drag up or down on the screen to scroll through displayed images.
- To view fewer thumbnails per screen, spread your fingers apart.
- Touch an image to choose it, and touch it again to view it in single-image display.



Double-Touch Magnification



- Quickly touch the screen twice to magnify the image about 3x.
- To return to single-image display from magnified display, quickly touch the screen twice.

Finding Images Matching Specified Conditions

► Still Images ► Movies

Find desired images quickly on a memory card full of images by filtering image display according to your specified conditions. You can also protect ([109]) or delete ([102]) these images all at once.

★ Rating	Displays images you have rated ([105]).
📅 Shot Date	Displays the images shot on a specific date.
👤 People	Displays images with detected faces.
📷 Still image/Movie	Displays still images, movies, or movies shot in [103] mode ([137]).



1 Choose the first condition.

- Press the [📷] button, choose [👤] in the menu, and then press the [📷] button. Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose a condition.
- When [👤] is selected, you can view only images matching this condition by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons. To perform an action for all of these images together, press the [📷] button and go to step 3.

2 Choose the second condition.

- When you have selected [★], [📅], or [📷] as the first condition, choose the second by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





3 View the filtered images.

- Images matching your conditions are displayed in yellow frames. To view only these images, press the [◀][▶] buttons.
- To cancel filtered display, press the [MENU] button, choose [OFF] in the menu, and then press the [MENU] button.



- When the camera has found no corresponding images for some conditions, those conditions will not be available.



- Options for viewing the images found (in step 3) include "Navigating through Images in an Index" (p. 95), "Magnifying Images" (p. 98), and "Viewing Slideshows" (p. 99). You can also apply image operations to all images found, by choosing [Protect All Images in Search] in "Protecting Images" (p. 99) or [Select All Images in Search] in "Erasing Multiple Images at Once" (p. 102), "Adding Images to the Print List (DPOF)" (p. 158), or "Adding Images to a Photobook" (p. 160).
- If you edit images and save them as new images (p. 106 – p. 108), a message is displayed, and the images that were found are no longer shown.
- The same operations are available by pressing the [MENU] button and choosing [▶] 1 tab > [Image Search].



- You can also choose conditions by touching the screens in steps 1 and 2.

Using the Front Dial to Jump between Images

► Still Images ► Movies

Use the front dial to find and jump between desired images quickly by filtering image display according to your specified conditions.

	Displays images you have rated (p. 105).
	Jumps to the first image in each group of images that were shot on the same date.
	Jumps by 10 images at a time.
	Jumps by 100 images at a time.



1 Choose a condition.

- In single-image display, drag left or right with two fingers.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons on the screen at left to choose a condition (or jump method).

2 View images matching your specified condition, or jump by the specified amount.

- Turn the [DIAL] dial to view only images matching the condition or jump by the specified number of images forward or back.



- The conditions [Rating], [Date], [10], or [100] are displayed only when some images have these ratings. Similarly, the conditions [▲] or [▼] are displayed only when some images have these ratings.
- Use [DIAL] to jump between images with any rating.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

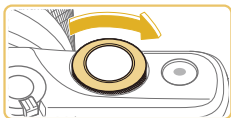
Index



Image Viewing Options

Magnifying Images

► Still Images ► Movies



(1)

1 Magnify an image.

- Turn the dial clockwise to zoom in and magnify images. You can magnify images up to about 10x by continuing to turn the dial.
- The approximate position of the displayed area (1) is shown for reference.
- To zoom out, turn the dial counterclockwise, and to restore single-image display, press the **[MENU]** button.

2 Move the display position and switch images as needed.

- To move the display position, press the **[▲][▼][◀][▶]** buttons.
- While **[SET]** is displayed, you can switch to **[SET]** by pressing the **[Q]** button. To switch to other images while zoomed, press the **[◀][▶]** buttons. Press the **[Q]** button again to restore the original setting.



- You can return to single-image display from magnified display by pressing the **[MENU]** button.

Touch-Screen Operations



- Spread your fingers apart (pinch out) to zoom in.
- You can magnify images up to about 10x by repeating this action.
- To move the display position, drag across the screen.
- Pinch in to zoom out.
- Touch **[MENU]** to restore single-image display.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

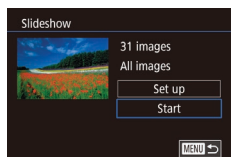
Index



Viewing Slideshows

► Still Images ► Movies

Automatically play back images from a memory card as follows.



- Press the [MENU] button, and then choose [Slideshow] on the [1] tab (132).
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Start], and then press the [GO] button.
- The slideshow will start after [Loading image] is displayed for a few seconds.
- Press the [MENU] button to stop the slideshow.



- The camera's power-saving functions (129) are deactivated during slideshows.



- To pause or resume slideshows, press the [GO] button.
- You can switch to other images during playback by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons. For fast-forward or fast-rewind, hold the [◀][▶] buttons down.
- You can configure slideshow repetition, display time per image, and the transition between images on the screen accessed by choosing [Set up] and pressing the [GO] button (132).



- You can also stop slideshows by touching the screen.

Protecting Images

► Still Images ► Movies

Protect important images to prevent accidental erasure (102).



- Press the [GO] button, choose [KEY] in the menu, and then choose [KEY] (either press the [◀][▶] buttons or turn the [WHEEL] dial). [ON] is displayed.
- To cancel protection, choose [OFF]. [ON] is no longer displayed.



- Protected images on a memory card will be erased if you format the card (139).



- Protected images cannot be erased using the camera's erasure function. To erase them this way, first cancel protection.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

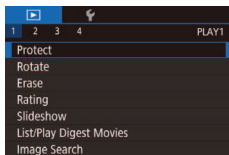
Accessories

Appendix

Index

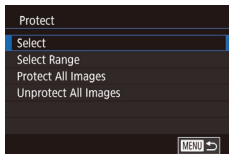


Using the Menu



1 Access the setting screen.

- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Protect] on the [1] tab (p.32).



2 Choose a selection method.

- Choose an option as desired (p.32).
- To return to the menu screen, press the [MENU] button.

Choosing Images Individually

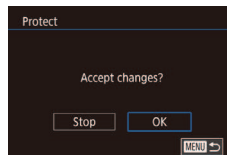
1 Choose [Select].

- Following step 2 in "Using the Menu" (p.100), choose [Select] and press the [OK] button.



2 Choose an image.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an image, and then press the [OK] button. [OK] is displayed.
- To cancel selection, press the [OK] button again. [OK] is no longer displayed.
- Repeat this process to specify other images.



3 Protect the image.

- Press the [MENU] button. A confirmation message is displayed.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.



- Images will not be protected if you switch to Shooting mode or turn the camera off before finishing the setup process in step 3.

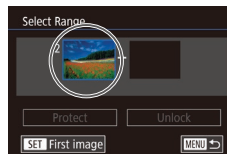


- You can also select or clear images by touching the screen in step 2, and you can access the confirmation screen by touching [MENU].
- You can also protect images by touching [OK] on the screen in step 3.

Selecting a Range

1 Choose [Select Range].

- Following step 2 in "Using the Menu" (p.100), choose [Select Range] and press the [OK] button.



2 Choose a starting image.

- Press the [OK] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

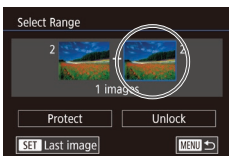
Appendix

Index





- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an image, and then press the [Ⓢ] button.

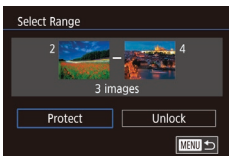


3 Choose an ending image.

- Press the [▶] button to choose [Last image], and then press the [Ⓢ] button.



- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an image, and then press the [Ⓢ] button.
- Images before the first image cannot be selected as the last image.



4 Protect the images.

- Press the [▼] button to choose [Protect], and then press the [Ⓢ] button.



- To cancel protection for groups of images, choose [Unlock] in step 4.

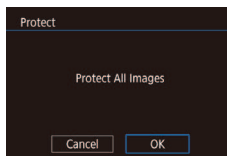


- You can also display the screen for choosing the first or last image by touching an image on the top screen in steps 2 or 3.
- You can also protect images by touching [Protect] on the screen in step 4.

Protecting All Images at Once

1 Choose [Protect All Images].

- Following step 2 in “Using the Menu” (p. 100), choose [Protect All Images] and press the [Ⓢ] button.



2 Protect the images.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [Ⓢ] button.

Clearing All Protection at Once

You can clear protection from all images at once.

To clear protection, choose [Unprotect All Images] in step 1 of “Protecting All Images at Once”, and then complete step 2.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



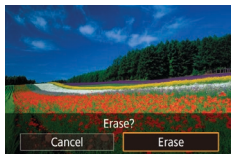
Erasing Images

► Still Images ► Movies

You can choose and erase unneeded images one by one. Be careful when erasing images, because they cannot be recovered. However, protected images (📖99) cannot be erased.

1 Choose an image to erase.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an image.



2 Erase the image.

- Press the [▲] button.
- After [Erase?] is displayed, press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Erase], and then press the [🔍] button.
- The current image is now erased.
- To cancel erasure, press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Cancel], and then press the [🔍] button.



- For images captured in both RAW and JPEG format, pressing the [▲] button while the image is displayed gives you the option of choosing [Erase RAW], [Erase JPEG], or [Erase RAW+JPEG].

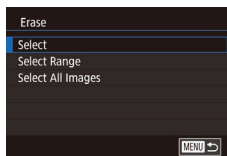
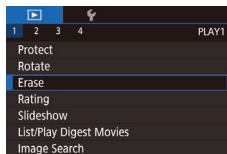


- You can also erase the current image by touching [Erase] on the screen in step 2.

Erasing Multiple Images at Once

You can choose multiple images to erase at once. Be careful when erasing images, because they cannot be recovered. However, protected images (📖99) cannot be erased.

Choosing a Selection Method



1 Access the setting screen.

- Press the [MENU] button, and then choose [Erase] on the [▶1] tab (📖32).

2 Choose a selection method.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose a selection method, and then press the [🔍] button.
- To return to the menu screen, press the [MENU] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Choosing Images Individually

1 Choose [Select].

- Following step 2 in “Choosing a Selection Method” (102), choose [Select] and press the  button.

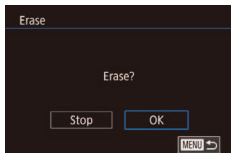


2 Choose an image.

- Once you choose an image following step 2 in “Choosing Images Individually” (100), [✓] is displayed.
- To cancel selection, press the  button again. [✓] is no longer displayed.
- Repeat this process to specify other images.

3 Erase the images.

- Press the [MENU] button. A confirmation message is displayed.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the  button.



- Choosing an image captured in both RAW and JPEG format will erase both versions.

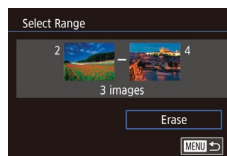
Selecting a Range

1 Choose [Select Range].

- Following step 2 in “Choosing a Selection Method” (102), choose [Select Range] and press the  button.

2 Choose images.

- Follow steps 2 – 3 in “Selecting a Range” (100) to specify images.



3 Erase the images.

- Press the [▼] button to choose [Erase], and then press the  button.

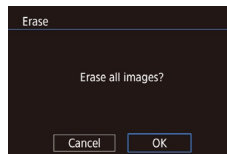
Specifying All Images at Once

1 Choose [Select All Images].

- Following step 2 in “Choosing a Selection Method” (102), choose [Select All Images] and press the  button.

2 Erase the images.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the  button.



Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Rotating Images

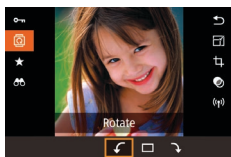
► Still Images ► Movies

Change the orientation of images and save them as follows.



1 Choose [Rotate].

- Press the [Rotate] button, and then choose [Rotate] in the menu (104).



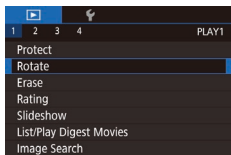
2 Rotate the image.

- Press the [Left] [Right] buttons or turn the [Sun] dial to choose [↶] or [↷], which rotates the image 90° in the specified direction. Press the [Rotate] button to complete the setting.



- Rotation is not possible when [Auto Rotate] is set to [Off] (104).

Using the Menu



1 Choose [Rotate].

- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Rotate] on the [1] tab (32).



2 Rotate the image.

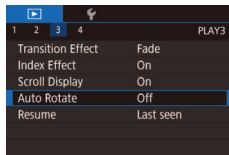
- Press the [Left] [Right] buttons to choose an image.
- Press the [Rotate] button to rotate the image 90° clockwise. Press it again to rotate it 90° counterclockwise, and press it a third time to restore the original orientation.
- To return to the menu screen, press the [MENU] button.



- On the screen in step 2, you can also touch [SET] to rotate images or touch [MENU] to return to the menu screen.

Deactivating Auto Rotation

Follow these steps to deactivate automatic image rotation, which rotates images based on the current camera orientation.



- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Auto Rotate] on the [3] tab, and then choose [Off] (32).



- Images cannot be rotated (104) when you set [Auto Rotate] to [Off]. Additionally, images already rotated will be displayed in the original orientation.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Rating Images (Rating)

► Still Images ► Movies

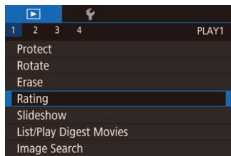
Organize images by rating them on a scale of 1 – 5 ([OFF], [★], [★★], [★★★], [★★★★], or [★★★★★]). By viewing only images with a specified rating, you can restrict the following operations to all images with that rating.

- “Viewing” (91), “Viewing Slideshows” (99), “Protecting Images” (99), “Erasing Images” (102), “Adding Images to the Print List (DPOF)” (158), “Adding Images to a Photobook” (160)



- Press the [★] button, choose [★] in the menu, and then rate the image (31).
- To remove ratings, repeat this process but choose [OFF], and then press the [★] button.

Using the Menu

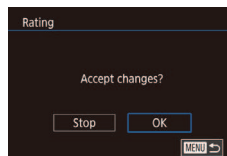


1 Choose [Rating].

- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Rating] on the [1] tab (32).

2 Choose an image and rate it.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an image, and then press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose a rating.



3 Complete the setting.

- Press the [MENU] button. A confirmation message is displayed.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [★] button.



- Ratings are not applied if you switch to Shooting mode or turn the camera off before finishing the setup process in step 3.



- You can also rate images by touching [▲][▼] on the bottom of the screen in step 2.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Editing Still Images



- Image editing (106 – 108) is only available when the memory card has sufficient free space.



- When [SET] is shown on the screen, you can touch [SET] instead of pressing the [Q] button, if you prefer.
- When [MENU] is shown on the screen, you can touch [MENU] instead of pressing the [MENU] button, if you prefer.

Resizing Images

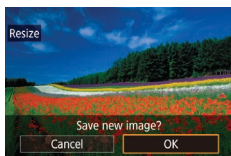
► Still Images ► Movies

Save a copy of images at a lower number of recording pixels.



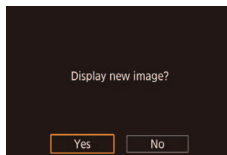
1 Choose an image size.

- Press the [Q] button, choose [F] in the menu, and choose an image size (131).
- Press the [Q] button.



2 Save the new image.

- After [Save new image?] is displayed, press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [Q] button.

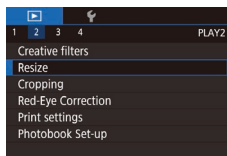


- Editing is not possible for images shot at a recording pixel setting of [S3] (43).
- RAW images cannot be edited.



- Images cannot be resized to a higher number of recording pixels.

Using the Menu



3 Review the new image.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Yes], and then press the [Q] button.
- The saved image is now displayed.

1 Choose [Resize].

- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Resize] on the [2] tab (32).

2 Choose an image.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an image, and then press the [Q] button.

3 Choose an image size.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose the size, and then press the [Q] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



4 Save as a new image and review.

- Follow step 2 in “Resizing Images” (106).
- Press the [MENU] button, and then follow step 3 in “Resizing Images” (106).

Cropping

► Still Images ► Movies

You can specify a portion of an image to save as a separate image file.

1 Access the setting screen.

- Press the [Q] button, choose [C] in the menu, and then press the [Q] button (31).



2 Resize, move, and adjust the aspect ratio of the cropping frame.

- To resize the frame, pinch in or out (98) on the screen.
- To move the frame, either drag it or press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons.
- To change the frame orientation, turn the [R] dial to choose [L], and then press the [Q] button.
- To change the frame aspect ratio, turn the [R] dial to choose [M]. To switch between aspect ratios ([3:2], [16:9], [4:3], and [1:1]), press the [Q] button repeatedly.



3 Preview the cropped image.

- Turn the [R] dial to choose [C].
- To switch display between the cropped image and the cropping frame, press the [Q] button repeatedly.

4 Save as a new image and review.

- Turn the [R] dial to choose [L], and then press the [Q] button.
- Follow steps 2 – 3 in “Resizing Images” (106).



- Editing is not possible for images shot at a recording pixel setting of [S3].
- RAW images cannot be edited.
- Cropped images cannot be cropped again.
- Cropped images cannot be resized or have Creative filters applied.



- Cropped images will have a lower number of recording pixels than uncropped images.
- While previewing the cropped image in step 3, you can resize, move, and adjust the aspect ratio of the cropping frame.
- Operations in step 2 are also possible by pressing the [MENU] button, choosing [2] tab > [Cropping], pressing the [Q] button, choosing an image, and pressing the [Q] button again.



- Operations are also possible by touching [C], [L], [M], and [L] on the top of the screen in step 2.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

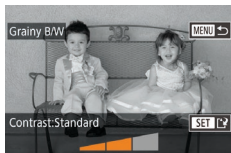
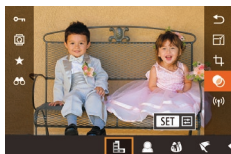
Appendix

Index



Applying Filter Effects

Apply effects equivalent to shooting in [L], [A], [S], [K], [C], [O], and [F] modes to images and save them as separate images.



1 Choose an effect.

- Press the [F] button, choose [O] in the menu, and then choose the effect (book 31).
- Press the [F] button.

2 Adjust the effect as needed.

- [L]: Press the [L][R] buttons to adjust contrast.
- [A]: Press the [L][R] buttons to adjust defocusing.
- [S] or [K]: Press the [L][R] buttons to adjust the level of the effect.
- [C]: Press the [L][R] buttons to adjust color saturation.
- [O]: Press the [L][R] buttons to adjust color tone.
- [F]: Turn the [SUN] dial to resize the frame, and press the [U][D] buttons to move it.

3 Save as a new image and review.

- Press the [F] button.
- Follow steps 2 – 3 in “Resizing Images” (book 106).



- [F]: To switch the orientation of the frame to vertical, press the [L][R] buttons on the screen in step 2. To move the frame, press the [L][R] buttons again. To return the frame to horizontal orientation, press the [U][D] buttons.
- The same operations are available by pressing the [MENU] button and choosing [2] tab > [Creative filters], choosing an image, and pressing the [F] button.
- To cancel applying effects on the screen in step 1, choose [OFF].

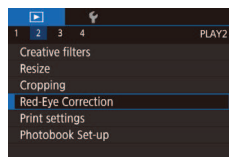


- You can also adjust the effect by touching or dragging the bar on the bottom of the screen in step 2. For [F], you can also move the frame by touching or dragging across the screen.

Correcting Red-Eye

► Still Images ► Movies

Automatically corrects images affected by red-eye. You can save the corrected image as a separate file.



1 Choose [Red-Eye Correction].

- Press the [MENU] button, and then choose [Red-Eye Correction] on the [2] tab (book 32).

2 Choose an image.

- Press the [L][R] buttons to choose an image.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

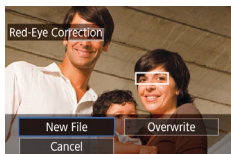
Appendix

Index



3 Correct the image.

- Press the **[RE]** button.
- Red-eye detected by the camera is now corrected, and frames are displayed around corrected image areas.
- Enlarge or reduce images as needed. Follow the steps in "Magnifying Images" (p.98).



4 Save as a new image and review.

- Press the **[▲][▼][◀][▶]** buttons to choose [New File], and then press the **[RE]** button.
- The image is now saved as a new file.
- Press the **[MENU]** button, and then follow step 3 in "Resizing Images" (p.106).



- Some images may not be corrected accurately.
- To overwrite the original image with the corrected image, choose [Overwrite] in step 4. In this case, the original image will be erased.
- Protected images cannot be overwritten.
- RAW images cannot be edited this way.
- Red-eye correction can be applied to JPEG images also captured in RAW format, but the original image cannot be overwritten.

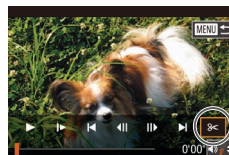


- You can also save images by touching [New File] or [Overwrite] on the screen in step 4.

Editing Movies

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

You can remove unneeded portions from the beginning and end of movies (excluding digest movies, p.37).



1 Choose [C].

- Following steps 1 – 5 in "Viewing" (p.91), choose **[C]** and press the **[RE]** button.
- The movie editing panel and editing bar are now displayed.

2 Specify portions to cut.

- (1) is the movie editing panel, and (2) is the editing bar.
- Press the **[▲][▼]** buttons to choose **[L]** or **[R]**.
- To specify a portion to cut (indicated by **[L]**), press the **[◀][▶]** buttons to move the orange **[L]** or **[R]** icon. Cut the beginning of the movie (from **[L]**) by choosing **[L]**, and cut the end of the movie by choosing **[R]**.
- If you move **[L]** or **[R]** to a position other than a **[L]** mark, in **[L]** the portion before the nearest **[L]** mark on the left will be cut, while in **[R]** the portion after the nearest **[L]** mark on the right will be cut.

3 Review the edited movie.

- Press the **[▲][▼]** buttons to choose **[▶]**, and then press the **[RE]** button. The edited movie is now played.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

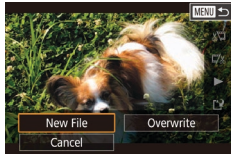
Accessories

Appendix

Index



- To edit the movie again, repeat step 2.
- To cancel editing, press the [MENU] button, press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [Ⓜ] button.



4 Save the edited movie.

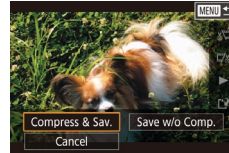
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [L], and then press the [Ⓜ] button.
- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose [New File], and then press the [Ⓜ] button.
- Choose [Save w/o Comp.], and then press the [Ⓜ] button.
- The movie is now saved as a new file.



- To overwrite the original movie with the cut one, choose [Overwrite] in step 4. In this case, the original movie will be erased.
- If the memory card lacks sufficient space, only [Overwrite] will be available.
- Movies may not be saved if the battery pack runs out while saving is in progress.
- When editing movies, you should use a fully charged battery pack or an AC adapter kit (sold separately, 148).

Reducing File Sizes

Movie file sizes can be reduced by compressing movies as follows.



- On the screen in step 2 of "Editing Movies", choose [L]. Choose [New File], and then press the [Ⓜ] button.
- Choose [Compress & Sav.], and then press the [Ⓜ] button.

Image Quality of Compressed Movies

Before Compression	After Compression
FHD 29.97P	HD 29.97P
FHD 23.98P	HD 23.98P
FHD 59.94P	HD 29.97P
FHD 25.00P	HD 25.00P
HD 50.00P	HD 25.00P



- [VGA 29.97P][VGA 25.00P] movies cannot be compressed.
- Edited movies cannot be saved in compressed format when you choose [Overwrite].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Editing Digest Movies

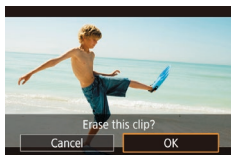
▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Individual chapters (clips) (📖37) recorded in [📹] mode can be erased, as needed. Be careful when erasing clips, because they cannot be recovered.



1 Select the clip to erase.

- Follow steps 1 – 2 in “Viewing Short Movies Created When Shooting Still Images (Digest Movies)” (📖94) to play a movie created in [📹] mode, and then press the [🔍] button to access the movie control panel.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [◀] or [▶], and then press the [🔍] button.



2 Choose [🔍].

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [🔍], and then press the [🔍] button.
- The selected clip is played back repeatedly.

3 Confirm erasure.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [🔍] button.
- The clip is erased, and the short movie is overwritten.



- [🔍] is not displayed if you select a clip when the camera is connected to a printer.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Wi-Fi Functions

Send images wirelessly from the camera to a variety of compatible devices, and use the camera with Web services



- Before using Wi-Fi, be sure to read "Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN) Precautions" (p.194).

Available Wi-Fi Features

You can send and receive images and control the camera remotely by connecting it to these devices and services via Wi-Fi.

- **Smartphones and Tablets**
Send images to smartphones and tablet computers that have Wi-Fi functions. You can also shoot remotely from a smartphone or tablet. For convenience in this manual, smartphones, tablets, and other compatible devices are collectively referred to as "smartphones".
- **Web Services**
Add your account information to the camera for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY online photography service or other Web services to send camera images to the services. Unsent images on the camera can also be sent to a computer or Web service via CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.
- **Media Player**
View images on DLNA*-compatible TVs or other devices.
* Digital Living Network Alliance
- **Printers**
Send images wirelessly to a PictBridge-compatible printer (supporting DPS over IP) to print them.
- **Another Camera**
Send images wirelessly between Wi-Fi-compatible Canon cameras.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Importing Images to a Smartphone

Import images to a smartphone as follows.

- Connect via NFC (📖 113)
Simply touch an NFC-compatible Android smartphone (OS version 4.0 or later) against the camera to connect the devices.
- Connect to a device assigned to the  button (📖 115)
Simply press the  button to connect the devices. This simplifies sending images to a smartphone (📖 115). Note that only one smartphone can be assigned to the  button.
- Connect via the Wi-Fi menu (📖 117)
Before connecting to the camera, you must install the free dedicated Camera Connect app on the smartphone. For details on this application (supported smartphones and included functions), refer to the Canon website.



- Canon Wi-Fi-compatible camera owners who use EOS Remote to connect their camera via Wi-Fi to a smartphone should consider switching to the Camera Connect mobile app.

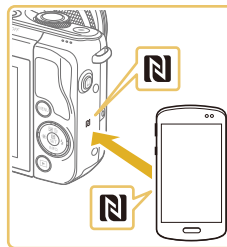
Sending Images to an NFC-Compatible Smartphone

Use an Android (OS version 4.0 or later) smartphone's NFC to simplify the process of installing Camera Connect and connecting to the camera.

Operation when devices are initially connected via NFC varies depending on the camera mode when the devices are touched together.

- If the camera is off or in Shooting mode when the devices are touched together, you can use the smartphone to import images from the camera. Once the devices are connected, you can also shoot remotely (📖 134). It's easy to reconnect to recent devices, which are listed in the Wi-Fi menu.
- If the camera is in Playback mode when the devices are touched together, you can choose and send images from the index display shown for image selection.

Connecting via NFC When Camera Is Off or in Shooting Mode



1 Install Camera Connect.

- Activate NFC on the smartphone and touch the devices' N-Marks (N) together to start Google Play on the smartphone automatically. Once the Camera Connect download page is displayed, download and install the app.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

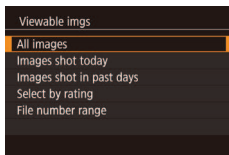
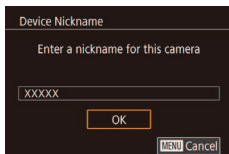
Appendix

Index



2 Establish the connection.

- Touch the N-Mark (N) on the smartphone with Camera Connect installed against the camera's N-Mark.
- The camera starts up automatically.
- If the [Device Nickname] screen is displayed, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.
- Camera Connect starts up on the smartphone, and the devices are connected automatically.



3 Adjust the privacy setting.

- When this screen is displayed, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [All images], and then press the [OK] button.
- This screen is no longer displayed about a minute after the devices have been connected.

4 Import images.

- Use the smartphone to import images from the camera to the smartphone.



- When using NFC, keep the following points in mind.
 - Avoid strong impact between the camera and smartphone. This may damage the devices.
 - Depending on the smartphone, the devices may not recognize each other immediately. In this case, try holding the devices together in slightly different positions. If connection is not established, keep the devices together until the camera screen is updated.
 - If you attempt connection when the camera is off, a message may be displayed on the smartphone reminding you to turn on the camera. If so, turn the camera on and touch the devices together again.
 - Do not place other objects between the camera and smartphone. Also, note that camera or smartphone covers or similar accessories may block communication.
- When shooting remotely, choose [All images] in step 3.
- All images in the camera can be viewed from the connected smartphone when you choose [All images] in step 3. To restrict camera images that can be viewed from the smartphone, choose a different option in step 3 (136). Once you have registered a smartphone, you can change privacy settings for it on the camera (136).



- Connections require that a memory card be in the camera.
- You can also change the camera nickname on the screen in step 2 (137).
- Not all NFC-compatible smartphones have an N-Mark (N). For details, refer to the smartphone user manual.
- To disable NFC connections, choose MENU (132) > [Wi-Fi] tab > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [NFC] > [Off].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

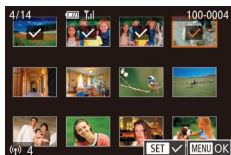
Accessories

Appendix

Index



Connecting via NFC When Camera Is in Playback Mode



- Press the [▶] button to turn the camera on.
- Touch the N-Mark (N) on the smartphone with Camera Connect installed (113) against the camera's N-Mark (N).
- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose an image to send, and then press the [Ⓢ] button. [✓] is displayed.
- To cancel selection, press the [Ⓢ] button again. [✓] is no longer displayed.
- Repeat this process to choose additional images.
- After you finish choosing images, press the [MENU] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [Ⓢ] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Send], and then press the [Ⓢ] button.
- The images are now sent.
- To end the connection, clear [✓] from all images, press the [MENU] button, and then press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK].



- If during connection a message on the camera or smartphone requests you to enter the nickname, follow step 2 in "Connecting via NFC When Camera Is Off or in Shooting Mode" (113) to enter it.
- The camera does not keep a record of smartphones you connect to via NFC in Playback mode.

Sending to a Smartphone Assigned to the Button

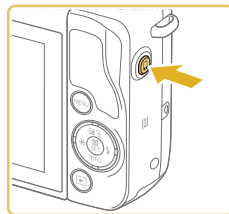
Once you have connected to a smartphone initially by pressing the [Ⓢ] button, you can simply press the [Ⓢ] button after that to connect again for viewing and saving camera images on your connected device.

These steps show how to use the camera as an access point, but you can also use an existing access point (118).



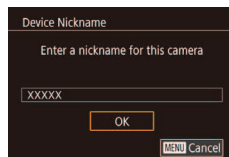
1 Install Camera Connect.

- For an iPhone or iPad, find Camera Connect in the App Store and download and install the app.
- For Android smartphones, find Camera Connect in Google Play and download and install the app.



2 Press the [Ⓢ] button.

- Press the [Ⓢ] button.



- If the [Device Nickname] screen is displayed, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [Ⓢ] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

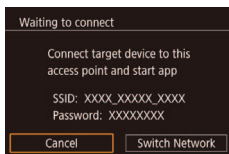
Index





3 Choose [📱].

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [📱], and then press the [📷] button.



- The camera SSID and password are displayed.

4 Connect the smartphone to the network.

- In the smartphone's Wi-Fi setting menu, choose the SSID (network name) displayed on the camera to establish a connection.
- In the password field, enter the password displayed on the camera.

5 Start Camera Connect.

- Start Camera Connect on the smartphone.

6 Select the camera to connect to.

- On the camera selection screen displayed on the smartphone, choose the camera to begin pairing.



7 Import images.

- Use the smartphone to import images from the camera to the smartphone.
- Use the smartphone to end the connection; the camera will automatically turn off.



- Connections require that a memory card be in the camera.
- You can also change the camera nickname on the screen in step 2 (📖137).
- Password input can be disabled by choosing MENU (📖32) > [🔍4] tab > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Password] > [Off], but we recommend setting it to [On] for better security.
- One smartphone can be registered to the [📱] button. To assign a different one, first clear the current one in MENU (📖32) > [🔍4] tab > [Mobile Device Connect Button].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Adding a Smartphone Using the Wi-Fi Menu

These steps show how to use the camera as an access point, but you can also use an existing access point (118).



1 Install Camera Connect.

- For Android smartphones, find Camera Connect in Google Play and download and install the app.
- For an iPhone or iPad, find Camera Connect in the App Store and download and install the app.



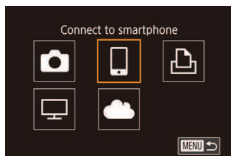
2 Access the Wi-Fi menu.

- Press the [▶] button to turn the camera on.
- Press the [Wi-Fi] button, and then choose [Wi-Fi] in the menu (31).
- If the [Device Nickname] screen is displayed, choose [OK] (115).



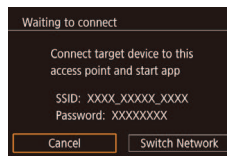
3 Choose [Wi-Fi].

- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose [Wi-Fi], and then press the [Wi-Fi] button.



4 Choose [Add a Device].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Add a Device], and then press the [Wi-Fi] button.



5 Connect the smartphone to the network.

- In the smartphone's Wi-Fi setting menu, choose the SSID (network name) displayed on the camera to establish a connection.
- In the password field, enter the password displayed on the camera.



6 Start Camera Connect.

- Start Camera Connect on the smartphone.



7 Select the camera to connect to.

- On the camera selection screen displayed on the smartphone, choose the camera to begin pairing.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

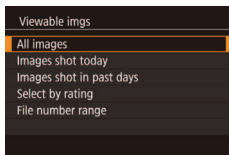
Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





8 Adjust the privacy setting.

- When this screen is displayed, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [All images], and then press the [ⓘ] button.
- This screen is no longer displayed about a minute after the devices have been connected.

9 Import images.

- Use the smartphone to import images from the camera to the smartphone.



- When shooting remotely, choose [All images] in step 8.
- All images in the camera can be viewed from the connected smartphone when you choose [All images] in step 8. To restrict camera images that can be viewed from the smartphone, choose a different option in step 8 (136). Once you have registered a smartphone, you can change privacy settings for it on the camera (136).



- Connections require that a memory card be in the camera.
- You can also change the camera nickname on the screen in step 2 (137).
- To connect without entering a password in step 5, choose MENU (32) > [4] tab > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Password] > [Off]. [Password] is no longer displayed on the SSID screen (in step 4).
- Once you have connected to devices, recent destinations will be listed first when you access the Wi-Fi menu. You can easily connect again by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the device and then pressing the [ⓘ] button. To add a new device, display the device selection screen by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons, and then configure the setting.
- If you prefer not to display recent target devices, choose MENU (32) > [4] tab > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Target History] > [Off].

Using Another Access Point

When connecting the camera to a smartphone with the [ⓘ] button or through the Wi-Fi menu, you can also use an existing access point.

Also refer to the access point user manual.

Confirming Access Point Compatibility

Confirm that the Wi-Fi router or base station conforms to the Wi-Fi standards in "Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN)" (188).

Connection methods vary depending on whether the access point supports Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS, 119) or not (120). For non-WPS access points, check the following information.

- Network name (SSID/ESSID)
The SSID or ESSID for the access point you use. Also called the "access point name" or "network name".

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



- Network authentication / data encryption (encryption method / encryption mode)
The method for encrypting data during wireless transmission. Check which security setting is used: WPA2-PSK (AES), WPA2-PSK (TKIP), WPA-PSK (AES), WPA-PSK (TKIP), WEP (open system authentication), or no security.
- Password (encryption key / network key)
The key used when encrypting data during wireless transmission. Also called the “encryption key” or “network key”.
- Key index (transmit key)
The key set when WEP is used for network authentication / data encryption. Use “1” as the setting.



- If system administrator status is needed to adjust network settings, contact the system administrator for details.
- These settings are very important for network security. Exercise adequate caution when changing these settings.



- For information on WPS compatibility and for instructions on checking settings, refer to the access point user manual.
- A router is a device that creates a network (LAN) structure for connecting multiple computers. A router that contains an internal Wi-Fi function is called a “Wi-Fi router”.
- This guide refers to all Wi-Fi routers and base stations as “access points”.
- If you use MAC address filtering on your Wi-Fi network, be sure to add the camera’s MAC address to your access point. You can check your camera’s MAC address by choosing MENU (32) > [4] tab > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Check MAC Address].

Using WPS-Compatible Access Points

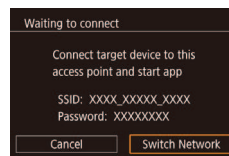
WPS makes it easy to complete settings when connecting devices over Wi-Fi. You can use either Push Button Configuration Method or PIN Method for settings on a WPS supported device.



1 Connect the smartphone to the access point.

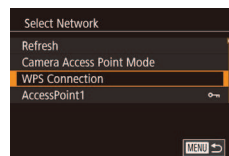
2 Prepare for the connection.

- Access the [Waiting to connect] screen by following steps 1 – 4 in “Adding a Smartphone Using the Wi-Fi Menu” (117).



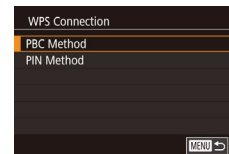
3 Choose [Switch Network].

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Switch Network], and then press the [OK] button.
- A list of detected access points will be displayed.



4 Choose [WPS Connection].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [WPS Connection], and then press the [OK] button.



5 Choose [PBC Method].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [PBC Method], and then press the [OK] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

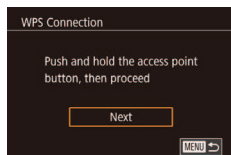
Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





6 Establish the connection.

- On the access point, hold down the WPS connection button for a few seconds.
- On the camera, press the button to go to the next step.

7 Import images.

- Follow steps 6 – 9 in “Adding a Smartphone Using the Wi-Fi Menu” (117) to choose the smartphone, adjust the privacy setting, and import the images.



- If you chose [PIN Method] in step 5, a PIN code will be displayed on the screen. Be sure to set this code in the access point. Choose a device in the [Select a Device] screen. For further details, refer to the user manual included with your access point.

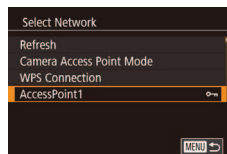
Connecting to Listed Access Points

1 View the listed access points.

- View the listed networks (access points) as described in steps 1 – 3 of “Using WPS-Compatible Access Points” (119).

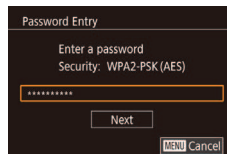
2 Choose an access point.

- Press the buttons to choose a network (access point), and then press the button.



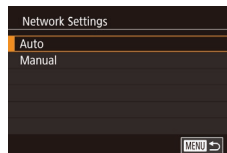
3 Enter the access point password.

- Press the button to access the keyboard, and then enter the password (33).
- Press the buttons to choose [Next], and then press the button.



4 Choose [Auto].

- Press the buttons to choose [Auto], and then press the button.



5 Import images.

- Follow steps 6 – 9 in “Adding a Smartphone Using the Wi-Fi Menu” (117) to choose the smartphone, adjust the privacy setting, and import the images.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- To determine the access point password, check on the access point itself or refer to the user manual.
- Up to 16 access points will be displayed. If no access points are detected even after you choose [Refresh] in step 2 to update the list, choose [Manual Settings] in step 2 to complete access point settings manually. Follow on-screen instructions and enter an SSID, security settings, and a password.
- Passwords of access points you have already connected to are displayed as [*] in step 3. To use the same password, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Next], and then press the [OK] button.

Previous Access Points

To reconnect to a previous access point automatically, follow step 3 in “Sending to a Smartphone Assigned to the Button” (115) or step 4 in “Adding a Smartphone Using the Wi-Fi Menu” (117).

- To use the camera as an access point, choose [Switch Network] on the screen displayed when you establish a connection, and then choose [Camera Access Point Mode].
- To switch access points, choose [Switch Network] on the screen displayed when you establish a connection, and then either follow the procedure in “Using WPS-Compatible Access Points” (119) from step 4 or the procedure in “Connecting to Listed Access Points” (120) from step 2.

Sending Images to a Registered Web Service

Registering Web Services

Use a smartphone or computer to add to the camera Web services that you want to use.

- A smartphone or computer with a browser and Internet connection is required to complete camera settings for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY and other Web services.
- Check the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY website for details on browser (Microsoft Internet Explorer, etc.) requirements, including settings and version information.
- For information on countries and regions where CANON iMAGE GATEWAY is available, visit the Canon website (<http://www.canon.com/cig/>).
- For CANON iMAGE GATEWAY instructions and setting details, refer to the help information for CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.
- You must have an account with Web services other than CANON iMAGE GATEWAY if you desire to use them. For further details, check the websites for each Web service you want to register.
- Separate ISP connection and access point fees may be applicable.



- CANON iMAGE GATEWAY also provides user guides for downloading.

Registering CANON iMAGE GATEWAY

After linking the camera and CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, add CANON iMAGE GATEWAY as a destination Web service on the camera.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





1 Log in to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY and access the camera link settings page.

- From a computer or smartphone, access <http://www.canon.com/cig/> to visit CANON iMAGE GATEWAY.
- Once the login screen is displayed, enter your user name and password to log in. If you do not have a CANON iMAGE GATEWAY account, follow the instructions to complete member registration (free of charge).
- Access the camera settings page.



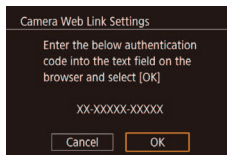
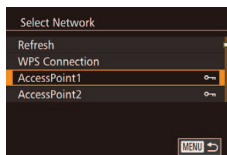
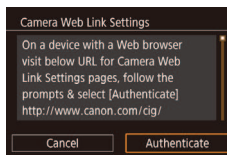
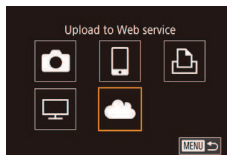
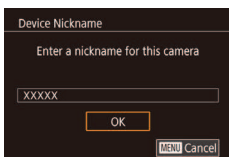
2 Access the page for entering the authentication code.

- Once you choose [Enter Authentication Code here], a page is displayed for entering the authentication code. On this page in step 7, you will enter the authentication code displayed on the camera after steps 3 – 6.



3 Access the Wi-Fi menu.

- Press the [] button to turn the camera on.
- Press the [] button, and then choose [] in the menu (131).
- If the [Device Nickname] screen is displayed, choose [OK] (114).



4 Choose [].

- Press the [][][][] buttons to choose [], and then press the [] button.

5 Choose [Authenticate].

- Press the [][] buttons to choose [Authenticate], and then press the [] button.

6 Establish a connection with an access point.

- Connect to the access point as described in steps 4 – 6 in “Using WPS-Compatible Access Points” (119) or in steps 2 – 4 in “Connecting to Listed Access Points” (120).
- Once the camera is connected to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY via the access point, an authentication code is displayed.
- Keep this screen displayed until you are finished with step 7.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

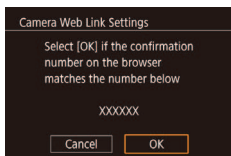
Index





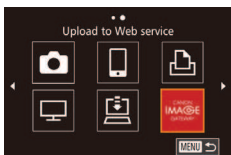
7 Enter the authentication code.

- On the smartphone or computer, enter the authentication code displayed on the camera and go to the next step.
- A six-digit confirmation number is displayed.



8 Check the confirmation number and complete the setup process.

- Check the confirmation number on the second screen in step 6 (displayed after you pressed the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then pressed the [G] button).
- Make sure the confirmation number on the camera matches the number on the smartphone or computer.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [G] button.
- Complete the setup process on the smartphone or computer.



- CANON iMAGE GATEWAY and [G] (131) are now added as destinations, and the [C] icon changes to [G].
- The Web service settings screen is displayed on the smartphone or computer.

To register other Web services, follow the procedure in “Registering Other Web Services” (123) from step 2.



- You can also change the camera nickname on the screen in step 3 (137).
- Once you have connected to devices via the Wi-Fi menu, recent destinations will be listed first when you access the menu. Press the [◀][▶] buttons to access the device selection screen and then configure the setting.

Registering Other Web Services

You can also add Web services besides CANON iMAGE GATEWAY to the camera. Note that CANON iMAGE GATEWAY must be registered on the camera first (121).



1 Access the Web service settings screen.

- Follow step 1 in “Registering CANON iMAGE GATEWAY” (121) to log in to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY, and then access the Web service settings screen.



2 Configure the Web service you want to use.

- Follow the instructions displayed on the smartphone or computer to set up the Web service.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

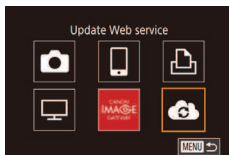
Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





3 Choose [Web service].

- In Playback mode, press the [OK] button, choose [Web service] in the menu, and press the [OK] button to access the Wi-Fi menu.
- Press the [Up][Down][Left][Right] buttons to choose [Web service], and then press the [OK] button.
- The Web service settings are now updated.



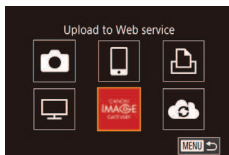
- If any configured settings change, follow these steps again to update the camera settings.

Uploading Images to Web Services



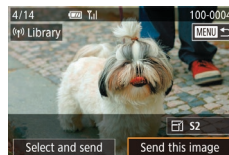
1 Access the Wi-Fi menu.

- Press the [Play] button to turn the camera on.
- Press the [OK] button, and then choose [Web service] in the menu (p.31).



2 Choose the destination.

- Press the [Up][Down][Left][Right] buttons to choose the icon of the Web service to connect to, and then press the [OK] button.
- If multiple recipients or sharing options are used with a Web service, choose the desired item on the [Select Recipient] screen by pressing the [Up][Down] buttons, and then press the [OK] button.



3 Send an image.

- Press the [Up][Down][Left][Right] buttons to choose [Send this image], and then press the [OK] button.
- When uploading to YouTube, read the terms of service, choose [I Agree], and press the [OK] button.
- Image transfer will begin. The screen darkens during image transfer.
- After the image is sent, [OK] is displayed. Press the [OK] button to return to the playback screen.



- Connections require that a memory card with saved images be in the camera.
- You can also send multiple images at once, resize images, and add comments before sending (p.129).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Viewing Images Using a Media Player

View images on the camera's memory card on a TV or other device.

This feature requires a DLNA-compatible TV set or other media player, such as a game system or smartphone. In this manual, the term "media player" is used to refer to any such device.

Follow these instructions only after the media player is connected to an access point. For relevant instructions, refer to the device's user manual.

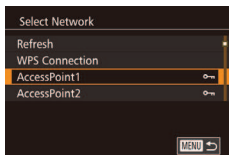
1 Access the Wi-Fi menu.

- Access the Wi-Fi menu as described in step 2 in "Adding a Smartphone Using the Wi-Fi Menu" (117).



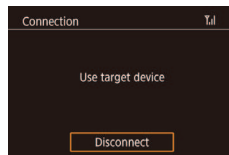
2 Choose [TV].

- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose [TV], and then press the [OK] button.



3 Establish a connection with an access point.

- Connect to the access point as described in steps 4 – 6 in "Using WPS-Compatible Access Points" (119) or in steps 2 – 4 in "Connecting to Listed Access Points" (120).



- Once the camera is ready for the media player connection, this screen is displayed. The screen will be dimmed after a while.
- After the devices are connected, use the media player to view images. For details, refer to the media player's user manual.

4 Display the media player settings screen on your TV set.

- On the media player, display [Canon EOS M10].
- A different icon may be displayed depending on the media player. Find an icon labeled [Canon EOS M10].

5 Display images.

- Choose [Canon EOS M10] > memory card (SD or other card) > folder > images.
- Select an image to display it on the media player. For details, refer to the media player's user manual.
- When finished, press the [OK] button on the camera to end the connection. If the screen is dimmed, press any button. Once the second screen in step 3 is displayed, press the [OK] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



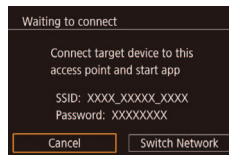
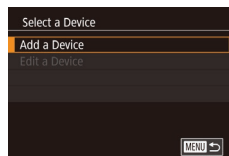


- Connections require that a memory card with saved images be in the camera.
- Once you have connected to devices via the Wi-Fi menu, recent destinations will be listed first when you access the Wi-Fi menu. You can easily connect again by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the device and then pressing the [Ⓜ] button. To add a new device, display the device selection screen by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons, and then configure the setting.
- Past media player connections are listed as "MediaServ."
- RAW images and movies are not displayed.
- Information overlay and details displayed on the TV set vary depending on the media player. Some media players may not display image information, or may display vertical images horizontally.
- Icons labeled with a range of numbers such as "1-100" contain images grouped by file number in the selected folder.
- Dates shown for cards or folders may be the date on the camera when last viewed.

Printing Images Wirelessly from a Connected Printer

Connect the camera to a printer via Wi-Fi to print as follows.

These steps show how to use the camera as an access point, but you can also use an existing access point (📖118).



1 Access the Wi-Fi menu.

- Access the Wi-Fi menu as described in step 2 in "Adding a Smartphone Using the Wi-Fi Menu" (📖117).

2 Choose [📄].

- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose [📄], and then press the [Ⓜ] button.

3 Choose [Add a Device].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Add a Device], and then press the [Ⓜ] button.

- The camera SSID and password are displayed.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

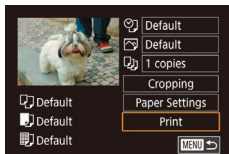
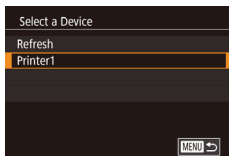
Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





4 Connect the printer to the network.

- In the printer's Wi-Fi setting menu, choose the SSID (network name) displayed on the camera to establish a connection.

5 Choose the printer.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the printer name, and then press the [OK] button.

6 Choose an image to print.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an image.
- Press the [OK] button, choose [Print], and press the [OK] button again.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Print], and then press the [OK] button.
- For detailed printing instructions, see "Printing Images" (154).
- To end the connection, press the [OK] button, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Off], press the [OK] button, press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.



- Connections require that a memory card with saved images be in the camera.
- Once you have connected to devices via the Wi-Fi menu, recent destinations will be listed first when you access the Wi-Fi menu. You can easily connect again by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the device and then pressing the [OK] button. To add a new device, display the device selection screen by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons, and then configure the setting.
- If you prefer not to display recent target devices, choose MENU (32) > [4] tab > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Target History] > [Off].
- When using another access point, see "Using Another Access Point" (118).

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



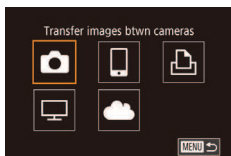
Sending Images to Another Camera

Connect two cameras via Wi-Fi and send images between them as follows.

- Only Canon-brand cameras equipped with a Wi-Fi function can be connected to wirelessly. You cannot connect to a Canon-brand camera that does not have a Wi-Fi function, even if it supports Eye-Fi cards. You cannot connect to DIGITAL IXUS WIRELESS cameras with this camera.

1 Access the Wi-Fi menu.

- Access the Wi-Fi menu as described in step 2 in “Adding a Smartphone Using the Wi-Fi Menu” (p.117).

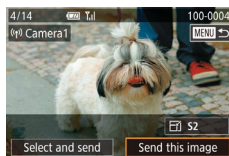


2 Choose [Camera].

- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose [Camera], and then press the [OK] button.

3 Choose [Add a Device].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Add a Device], and then press the [OK] button.
- Follow steps 1 – 3 on the target camera too.
- Camera connection information will be added when [Start connection on target camera] is displayed on both camera screens.



4 Send an image.

- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose [Send this image], and then press the [OK] button.
- Image transfer will begin. The screen darkens during image transfer.
- [Transfer completed] is displayed after the image is sent, and the image transfer screen is displayed again.
- To end the connection, press the [MENU] button, press the [◀][▶] buttons on the confirmation screen to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.



- Connections require that a memory card be in the camera.
- Once you have connected to devices via the Wi-Fi menu, recent destinations will be listed first when you access the Wi-Fi menu. You can easily connect again by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the device and then pressing the [OK] button. To add a new device, display the device selection screen by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons, and then configure the setting.
- If you prefer not to display recent target devices, choose MENU (p.32) > [Wi-Fi Settings] > [Target History] > [Off].
- You can also send multiple images at once and change the image size before sending (p.129).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

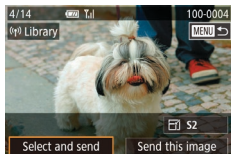
Index



Image Sending Options

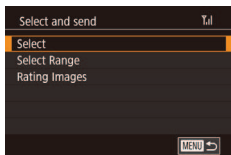
You can choose multiple images to send at once and change the image recording pixel setting (size) before sending. Some Web services also enable you to annotate the images you send.

Sending Multiple Images



1 Choose [Select and send].

- On the image transfer screen, press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Select and send], and then press the [OK] button.



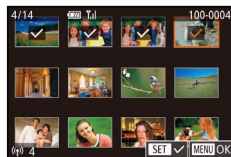
2 Choose a selection method.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose a selection method.

Choosing Images Individually

1 Choose [Select].

- Following step 2 in “Sending Multiple Images” (129), choose [Select] and press the [OK] button.



2 Choose an image.

- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose an image to send, and then press the [OK] button. [✓] is displayed.
- To cancel selection, press the [OK] button again. [✓] is no longer displayed.
- Repeat this process to choose additional images.
- After you finish choosing images, press the [MENU] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.

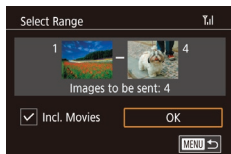
3 Send the images.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Send], and then press the [OK] button.

Selecting a Range

1 Choose [Select Range].

- Following step 2 in “Sending Multiple Images” (129), choose [Select Range] and press the [OK] button.



2 Choose images.

- Follow steps 2 – 3 in “Selecting a Range” (103) to specify images.
- To include movies, press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose [Incl. Movies], and then press the [OK] button to mark the option as selected (✓).
- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



3 Send the images.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Send], and then press the [📧] button.

Sending Rated Images

Send multiple images with the same rating (📖 105).

1 Choose [Rating Images].

- Following step 2 in “Sending Multiple Images” (📖 129), choose [Rating Images] and press the [📧] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose a rating, and then press the [📧] button. An image selection screen is displayed that includes only images with that rating.
- You can also remove images from the group to send, by choosing an image and pressing the [📧] button to clear the [✓] mark.
- After you finish choosing images, press the [MENU] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [📧] button.

2 Send the images.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Send], and then press the [📧] button.

Notes on Sending Images

- Depending on the condition of the network you are using, it may take a long time to send movies. Be sure to keep an eye on the camera battery level.
- Web services may limit the number of images or length of movies you can send.
- When sending movies to smartphones, note that the supported image quality varies depending on the smartphone. For details, refer to the smartphone user manual.
- On the screen, wireless signal strength is indicated by the following icons.
[📶] high, [📶] medium, [📶] low, [📶] weak
- Sending images to Web services will take less time when resending images you have already sent that are still on the CANON IMAGE GATEWAY server.

Choosing the Number of Recording Pixels (Image Size)

On the image transfer screen, choose [F] by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons, and then press the [📧] button. On the screen displayed, choose the recording pixel setting (image size) by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons, and then press the [📧] button.

- To send images at original size, select [No] as the resizing option.
- Choosing [S2] will resize images that are larger than the selected size before sending.
- Movies cannot be resized.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

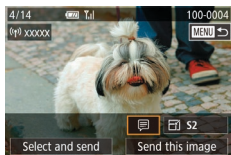
Appendix

Index



Adding Comments

Using the camera, you can add comments to images that you send to e-mail addresses, social networking services, etc. The number of characters and symbols that can be entered may differ depending on the Web service.



1 Access the screen for adding comments.

- On the image transfer screen, choose [] by pressing the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons, and then press the [] button.

2 Add a comment (33).

3 Send the image.



- When a comment is not entered, the comment set in CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY is automatically sent.
- You can also annotate multiple images before sending them. The same comment is added to all images sent together.

Sending Images Automatically (Image Sync)

Images on the memory card that have not been transferred already can be sent to a computer or Web services via CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY.

Note that images cannot be sent only to Web services.

Initial Preparations

Preparing the Camera

Register [] as the destination. You can also assign [] to the [] button, so that you can simply press the [] button to send any unsent images on the memory card to a computer via CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY. On the destination computer, you will install and configure Image Transfer Utility, free software compatible with Image Sync.



1 Add [] as a destination.

- Add [] as a destination, as described in “Registering CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY” (121).
- To include a Web service as the destination, log in to CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY (123), select your camera model, access the Web service settings screen, and choose the destination Web service in Image Sync settings. For details, refer to CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY Help.

2 Choose the type of images to send (only when sending movies with images).

- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Wi-Fi Settings] on the [4] tab (32).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Image Sync], and then choose [Stills/Movies] (132).

3 Assign [i] to the [i] button (only when sending images by pressing the [i] button).

- Clear the [i] button setting if a smartphone is already assigned to the button (115).
- Press the [i] button to access the mobile connection screen, choose [i] by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons, and then press the [i] button.

Preparing the Computer

Install and configure the software on the destination computer.



1 Install Image Transfer Utility.

- Install Image Transfer Utility on a computer connected to the Internet (153).
- Image Transfer Utility can also be downloaded from the Image Sync settings page of CANON iMAGE GATEWAY (131).

2 Register the camera.

- Windows: In the taskbar, right-click [i], and then click [Add new camera].
- Mac OS: In the menu bar, click [i], and then click [Add new camera].

- A list of cameras linked to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY is displayed. Choose the camera from which images are to be sent.
- Once the camera is registered and the computer is ready to receive images, the icon changes to [i].

Sending Images

Images sent from the camera are automatically saved to the computer.

If the computer that you intend to send images to is turned off, the images will be stored temporarily on the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY server. Stored images are regularly erased, so make sure to turn on the computer and save the images.

1 Send images.

- Follow steps 1 – 2 in “Uploading Images to Web Services” (124) and choose [i].
- Once the connection is established, the images are sent. When the images have been sent successfully to the CANON iMAGE GATEWAY server, [i] is displayed on the screen.

2 Save the images to the computer.

- Images are automatically saved to the computer when you turn it on.
- Sent images are labeled with a [i] icon.

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index





- When sending images, you should use a fully charged battery pack or an AC adapter kit (sold separately, 148).



- Even if images were imported to the computer through a different method, any images not sent to the computer via CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY will be sent to the computer.
- Sending is faster when the destination is a computer on the same network as the camera, because images are sent via the access point instead of CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY. Note that images stored on the computer are sent to CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY, so the computer must be connected to the Internet.

Viewing Images Sent via Image Sync on a Smartphone

By installing the Canon Online Photo Album (Canon OPA) app, you can use your smartphone to view and download images sent via Image Sync while they are stored temporarily on the CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY server.

In preparation, enable smartphone access as follows.

- Make sure you have completed the settings described in "Preparing the Computer" (132).
- Download and install the Canon Online Photo Album app for iPhones or iPads from the App Store or for Android devices from Google Play.
- Log in to CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY (121), select your camera model, access the Web service settings screen, and enable viewing and downloading from a smartphone in the Image Sync settings. For details, refer to CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY Help.



- Once images stored temporarily on the CANON iIMAGE GATEWAY server have been deleted, they can no longer be viewed.
- Images you sent before enabling smartphone viewing and downloading in Image Sync settings cannot be accessed this way.



- For Canon Online Photo Album instructions, refer to Canon Online Photo Album Help.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shooting Remotely

As you check a shooting screen on your smartphone, you can use it to shoot remotely.



- Privacy settings must be configured in advance to allow viewing of all images from the smartphone (📖114, 📖136).

1 Secure the camera.

- Keep the camera still by mounting it on a tripod or taking other measures.

2 Connect the camera and smartphone (📖113, 📖115).

- In the privacy settings, choose [All images].

3 Choose remote shooting.

- In Camera Connect on the smartphone, choose remote shooting.
- Once the camera is ready for remote shooting, a live image from the camera will be displayed on the smartphone.
- At this time, a message is displayed on the camera, and all operations except pressing the ON/OFF button are disabled.

4 Shoot.

- Use the smartphone to shoot.



- Movie shooting is not available.
- Focusing may take longer.
- Image display or shutter release may be delayed, depending on the connection status.



- Any jerky subject motion shown on the smartphone due to the connection environment will not affect recorded images.
- Captured images are not transferred to the smartphone. Use the smartphone to browse and import images from the camera.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

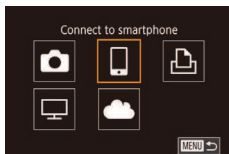
Index



Editing or Erasing Wi-Fi Settings

Edit or erase Wi-Fi settings as follows.

Editing Connection Information



1 Access the Wi-Fi menu and choose a device to edit.

- Press the [▶] button to turn the camera on.
- Press the [ⓘ] button, and then choose [P] in the menu (131).
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to access the device selection screen, press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose the icon of a device to edit, and then press the [ⓘ] button.



2 Choose [Edit a Device].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Edit a Device], and then press the [ⓘ] button.



3 Choose the device to edit.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the device to edit, and then press the [ⓘ] button.

4 Choose the item to edit.

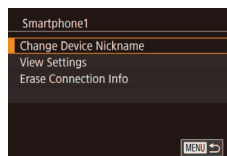
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the item to edit, and then press the [ⓘ] button.
- The items you can change depend on the device or service.

Configurable Items	Connection				
					Web Services
Change Device Nickname (135)	O	O	O	–	–
View Settings (136)	–	O	–	–	–
Erase Connection Info (136)	O	O	O	–	–

O : Configurable – : Not configurable

Changing a Device Nickname

You can change the device nickname (display name) that is displayed on the camera.



- Following step 4 in “Editing Connection Information” (135), choose [Change Device Nickname] and press the [ⓘ] button.
- Select the input field and press the [ⓘ] button. Use the keyboard displayed to enter a new nickname (33).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

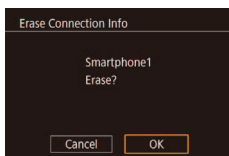
Appendix

Index



Erasing Connection Information

Erase connection information (information about devices that you have connected to) as follows.



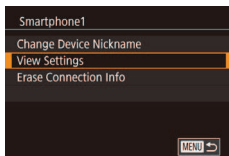
- Following step 4 in “Editing Connection Information” (135), choose [Erase Connection Info] and press the [OK] button.
- After [Erase?] is displayed, press the [Left][Right] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.
- The connection information will be erased.

Specifying Images Viewable from Smartphones

Specify which images on the camera's memory card can be viewed from smartphones connected to the camera.

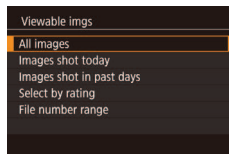
Setting Option	Images Viewable from Smartphones
All images	All images on the memory card
Images shot today	Images shot that day
Images shot in past days	Images shot within the specified number of days
Select by rating	Image with the specified rating (105)
File number range	Images in the specified range of file numbers

The same instructions can be followed when the screen in step 2 is displayed after you establish a connection with a smartphone.



1 Access the setting screen.

- Following step 4 in “Editing Connection Information” (135), choose [View Settings] and press the [OK] button.



2 Choose and set an option.

- Press the [Up][Down] buttons to choose an option.
- After choosing [All images] or [Images shot today]: Press the [OK] button.
- After choosing [Images shot in past days]: Press the [OK] button, press the [Up][Down] buttons on the next screen to specify the number of days, and then press the [OK] button.
- After choosing [Select by rating]: Press the [OK] button, press the [Up][Down] buttons on the next screen to choose the rating, and then press the [OK] button.
- After choosing [File number range]: Press the [OK] button, specify the first and last number on the next screen, choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button. For instructions on specifying the range, see steps 2 – 3 in “Selecting a Range” (100).



When shooting remotely, choose [All images].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

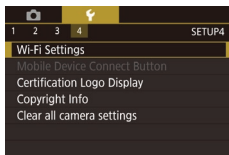
Appendix

Index



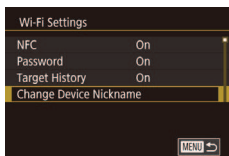
Changing the Camera Nickname

Change the camera nickname (displayed on connected devices) as desired.



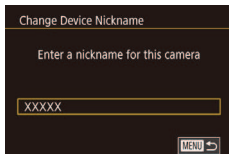
1 Choose [Wi-Fi Settings].

- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Wi-Fi Settings] on the [F4] tab (p32).



2 Choose [Change Device Nickname].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Change Device Nickname], and then press the [F5] button.



3 Change the nickname.

- Press the [F5] button to access the keyboard (p33), and then enter a nickname.

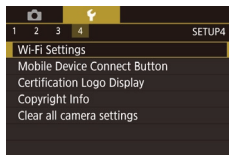


- A message is displayed if the nickname you enter begins with a symbol or space. Press the [F5] button and enter a different nickname.
- You can also change the nickname from the [Device Nickname] screen displayed when you first use Wi-Fi. In this case, select the text box, press the [F5] button to access the keyboard, and then enter a new nickname.

Returning the Wi-Fi Settings to Default

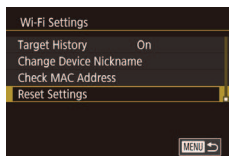
Return the Wi-Fi settings to default if you transfer ownership of the camera to another person, or dispose of it.

Resetting the Wi-Fi settings will also clear all Web service settings. Be sure that you want to reset all Wi-Fi settings before using this option.



1 Choose [Wi-Fi Settings].

- Press the [MENU] button and choose [Wi-Fi Settings] on the [F4] tab (p32).



2 Choose [Reset Settings].

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Reset Settings], and then press the [F5] button.

3 Restore the default settings.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [F5] button.
- The Wi-Fi settings are now reset.



- To reset other settings (aside from Wi-Fi) to defaults, choose [Clear all camera settings] on the [F4] tab (p145).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Setting Menu

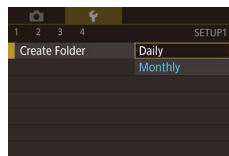
Customize or adjust basic camera functions for greater convenience

Adjusting Basic Camera Functions

MENU (📖32) settings on the [F1], [F2], [F3], and [F4] tabs can be configured. Customize commonly used functions as desired, for greater convenience.

Date-Based Image Storage

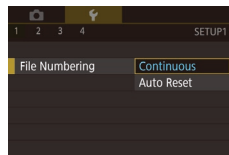
Instead of saving images in folders created each month, you can have the camera create folders each day you shoot to store shots taken that day.



- Choose [Create Folder] on the [F1] tab, and then choose [Daily].
- Images will now be saved in folders created on the shooting date.

File Numbering

Your shots are automatically numbered in sequential order (0001 – 9999) and saved in folders that store up to 2,000 images each. You can change how the camera assigns file numbers.



- Choose [File Numbering] on the [F1] tab, and then choose an option.

Continuous	Images are numbered consecutively (until the 9999th shot is taken/saved) even if you switch memory cards.
Auto Reset	Image numbering is reset to 0001 if you switch memory cards, or when a new folder is created.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- Regardless of the option selected in this setting, shots may be numbered consecutively after the last number of existing images on newly inserted memory cards. To start saving shots from 0001, use an empty (or formatted, 139) memory card.

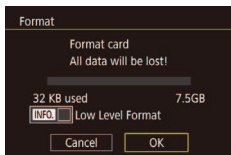
Formatting Memory Cards

Before using a new memory card or a card formatted in another device, you should format the card with this camera.

Formatting erases all data on a memory card. Before formatting, copy images on the memory card to a computer, or take other steps to back them up.

1 Access the [Format] screen.

- Choose [Format] on the [1] tab, and then press the [OK] button.



2 Choose [OK].

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.
- The memory card is now formatted.



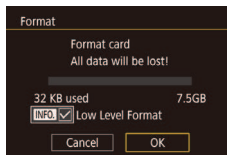
- Formatting or erasing data on a memory card only changes file management information on the card and does not erase the data completely. When transferring or disposing of memory cards, take steps to protect personal information if necessary, as by physically destroying cards.



- The total card capacity indicated on the formatting screen may be less than the advertised capacity.

Low-Level Formatting

Perform low-level formatting in the following cases: [Memory card error] is displayed, the camera is not working correctly, card image reading/writing is slower, continuous shooting is slower, or movie recording suddenly stops. Low-level formatting erases all data on a memory card. Before low-level formatting, copy images on the memory card to a computer, or take other steps to back them up.



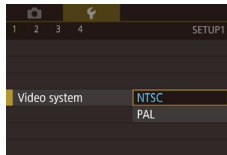
- On the screen in step 2 of “Formatting Memory Cards” (139), press the [▼] button to choose [Low Level Format]. A [✓] icon is displayed.
- Follow step 2 in “Formatting Memory Cards” (139) to continue with the formatting process.



- Low-level formatting takes longer than “Formatting Memory Cards” (139), because data is erased from all storage regions of the memory card.
- You can cancel low-level formatting in progress by choosing [Cancel]. In this case, all data will be erased, but the memory card can be used normally.

Changing the Video System

Set the video system of any television used for display. This setting determines the image quality (frame rate) available for movies.



- Choose [Video system] on the [1] tab, and then choose an option.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

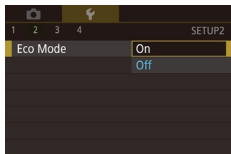
Appendix

Index



Using Eco Mode

This function allows you to conserve battery power in Shooting mode. When the camera is not in use, the screen quickly darkens to reduce battery consumption.



1 Configure the setting.

- Choose [Eco Mode] on the [F2] tab, and then choose [On].
- [ECO] is now shown on the shooting screen (167).
- The screen darkens when the camera is not used for approximately two seconds; approximately ten seconds after darkening, the screen turns off. The camera turns off after approximately three minutes of inactivity.

2 Shoot.

- To activate the screen and prepare for shooting when the screen is off but the indicator is lit, press the shutter button halfway.

Power-Saving Adjustment

Adjust the timing of automatic camera and screen deactivation (Auto Power Down and Display Off, respectively) as needed (29).



- Choose [Power Saving] on the [F2] tab, and then press the [OK] button.
- Choose an item and press the [OK] button. Press the [▲]/[▼] buttons to adjust the setting, and then press the [OK] button again.



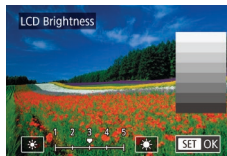
- To conserve battery power, you should normally choose [On] for [Auto Power Down] and [1 min.] or less for [Display Off].



- The [Display Off] setting is applied even if you set [Auto Power Down] to [Off].
- These power-saving functions are not available when you have set Eco mode (140) to [On].

Screen Brightness

Adjust screen brightness as follows.



- Choose [F2] tab > [LCD Brightness], press the [OK] button, and then press the [◀]/[▶] buttons to adjust the brightness.



- For maximum brightness, press and hold the [▼] button for at least one second when the shooting screen is displayed or when in single-image display. (This will override the [LCD Brightness] setting on the [F2] tab.) To restore the original brightness, press and hold the [▼] button again for at least one second or restart the camera.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

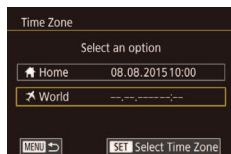
Index



World Clock

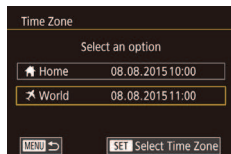
To ensure that your shots will have the correct local date and time when you travel abroad, simply register the destination in advance and switch to that time zone. This convenient feature eliminates the need to change the Date/Time setting manually.

Before using the world clock, be sure to set the date and time and your home time zone, as described in “Setting the Date and Time” (p.20).



1 Specify your destination.

- Choose [Time Zone] on the [F2] tab, and then press the [G] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [✈ World], and then press the [G] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose the destination.
- To set daylight saving time (1 hour ahead), choose [⌚] by pressing the [▲][▼] buttons, and then choose [⌚] by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons.
- Press the [G] button.



2 Switch to the destination time zone.

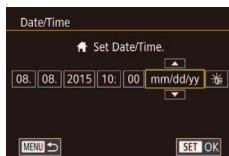
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [✈ World], and then press the [MENU] button.
- [✈] is now shown on the shooting screen (p.167).



- Adjusting the date or time while in [✈] mode (p.21) will automatically update your [Home] time and date.

Date and Time

Adjust the date and time as follows.



- Choose [Date/Time] on the [F2] tab, and then press the [G] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an item, and then press the [▲][▼] buttons to adjust the setting.

Display Language

Change the display language as needed.



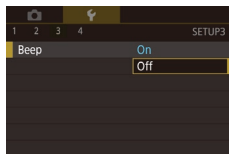
- Choose [Language] on the [F2] tab, and then press the [G] button.
- Press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons to choose a language, and then press the [G] button.



- You can also access the [Language] screen in Playback mode by pressing and holding the [G] button and then pressing the [MENU] button.

Muting Camera Sounds

Prevent the camera from playing sounds when you press the shutter button halfway or activate the self-timer.



- Choose [Beep] on the [F3] tab, and then choose [Off].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

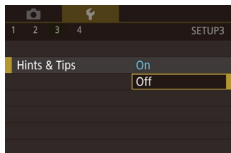
Appendix

Index



Hiding Hints and Tips

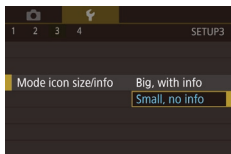
Guidance is normally shown when you choose items in the Quick Set menu (📖31) or on the shooting screen (📖63). If you prefer, you can deactivate this information.



- Choose [Hints & Tips] on the [F3] tab, and then choose [Off].

Listing Shooting Modes by Icon

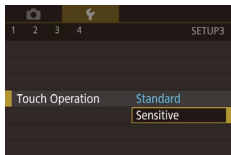
List shooting modes on the selection screen by icon only, without mode names, for faster selection.



- Choose [Mode icon size/info] on the [F3] tab, and then choose [Small, no info].

Adjusting the Touch-Screen Panel

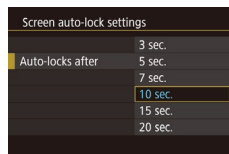
Sensitivity of the touch-screen panel can be increased, so that the camera responds to a lighter touch.



- Choose [Touch Operation] on the [F3] tab, and then choose [Sensitive].

Automatically Locking the Touch-Screen Panel

To prevent unintended operations, you can set up automatic locking of the touch-screen panel.



- Choose [Screen auto-lock settings] on the [F3] tab, choose [Screen auto lock], and then choose [Enable].
- Choose [Auto-locks after], and then choose an option.
- To unlock the touch-screen panel, press the shutter button halfway.



- The touch-screen panel is not locked when the screen is about 180° open.
- The touch-screen panel can also be unlocked by pressing or turning controls, such as the [MENU] button or [🌞] dial.

Cleaning the Image Sensor

The image sensor is automatically cleaned to remove dust whenever you turn the camera on or off, or when the camera shuts off in Power Saving mode. You can disable automatic cleaning or activate cleaning as needed.

Disabling Auto Cleaning

- 1 Access the setting screen.
 - Turn the camera on in Shooting mode, choose [Sensor cleaning] on the [F3] tab, and press the [🔍] button.
 - Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Auto cleaning: 🗑️], and then press the [🔍] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

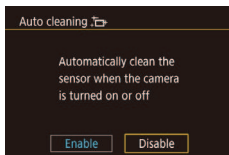
Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





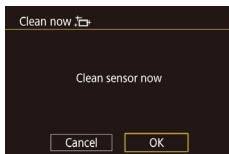
2 Configure the setting.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [Disable], and then press the [OK] button.

Activating Sensor Cleaning

1 Access the setting screen.

- Turn the camera on in Shooting mode, choose [Sensor cleaning] on the [F3] tab, and press the [OK] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Clean now], and then press the [OK] button.



2 Start cleaning.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.
- A message is displayed indicating that cleaning is in progress. Although there will be a shutter sound, a picture is not taken.



- The sensor cleaning also works while no lens is attached. If no lens is attached, do not insert your finger or blower tip beyond the lens mount. This is to prevent damage to the shutter curtains.



- For best results, clean with the camera placed upright on a desk or other surface.
- Repeated cleaning will not produce notably better results. Note that [Clean now] may not be available immediately after cleaning.
- Contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk regarding dust or other material that cannot be removed by sensor cleaning.

Cleaning the Sensor Manually

Any dust that remains after automatic cleaning can also be removed by using an optional blower or other specialized tool.

The surface of the image sensor is extremely delicate. If the sensor must be cleaned manually, we recommend requesting service from a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

1

Make sure the camera is off.

2

Detach the lens.

3

Clean the sensor.



- The image sensor is extremely delicate. Clean the sensor with care.
- Use a blower without a brush attached. A brush can scratch the sensor.
- Do not insert the blower tip inside the camera beyond the lens mount. It can damage the shutter curtains.
- Never use canned air or gas to clean the sensor. The blowing force can damage the sensor or the spray gas can freeze on the sensor.
- If a smudge that cannot be removed with a blower remains, having the sensor cleaned by a Canon Customer Support Help Desk is recommended.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

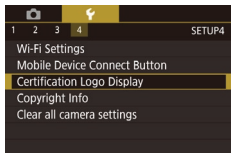
Appendix

Index



Checking Certification Logos

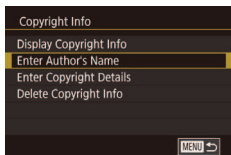
Some logos for certification requirements met by the camera can be viewed on the screen. Other certification logos are printed in this guide, on the camera packaging, or on the camera body.



- Choose [Certification Logo Display] on the [4] tab, and then press the [G] button.

Setting Copyright Information to Record in Images

To record the author's name and copyright details in images, set this information beforehand as follows.



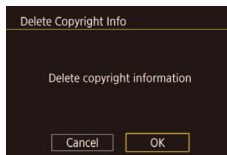
- Choose [Copyright Info] on the [4] tab, and then press the [G] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Enter Author's Name] or [Enter Copyright Details]. Press the [G] button to access the keyboard, and enter the name (133).
- Press the [MENU] button. When [Accept changes?] is displayed, press the [4][2] buttons to choose [Yes], and then press the [G] button.
- The information set here will now be recorded in images.



- To check the information entered, choose [Display Copyright Info] on the screen above, and then press the [G] button.
- You can also use EOS Utility (152) to enter, change, or delete copyright information on the camera. Some characters entered with the software may not display on the camera, but will be correctly recorded in images.
- You can check copyright information recorded in images by using the software, once you save the images to a computer.

Deleting All Copyright Information

You can delete both the author's name and copyright details at the same time as follows.



- Follow the steps in "Setting Copyright Information to Record in Images" (144) and choose [Delete Copyright Info].
- Press the [4][2] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [G] button.



- The copyright info already recorded in images will not be deleted.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Adjusting Other Settings

The following settings can also be adjusted.

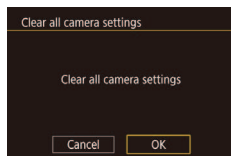
- [Wi-Fi Settings] ([F4] tab) (112)
- [Mobile Device Connect Button] ([F4] tab) (115)
- [Camera firmware ver.] ([F4] tab) (used for firmware updates)



- During firmware updates, the touch-screen panel will be disabled to prevent accidental operations.

Restoring Default Camera Settings

If you accidentally change a setting, you can restore default camera settings.



- 1 Access the [Clear all camera settings] screen.**
 - Choose [Clear all camera settings] on the [F4] tab, and then press the [G] button.
- 2 Restore default settings.**
 - Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [G] button.
 - Default settings are now restored.



- The following functions are not restored to default settings.
 - = [F1] tab setting [Video system] (139)
 - = [F2] tab settings [Time Zone] (141), [Date/Time] (141), and [Language] (141)
 - = [F1] Tab
 - = Shooting mode (52)
 - = Wi-Fi settings (112)
 - = Copyright information (144)

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Accessories

Enjoy the camera in more ways with optional Canon accessories and other compatible accessories sold separately

Use of genuine Canon accessories is recommended.

This product is designed to achieve excellent performance when used with genuine Canon accessories.

Canon shall not be liable for any damage to this product and/or accidents such as fire, etc., caused by the malfunction of non-genuine Canon accessories (e.g., a leakage and/or explosion of a battery pack). Please note that this warranty does not apply to repairs arising out of the malfunction of non-genuine Canon accessories, although you may request such repairs on a chargeable basis.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

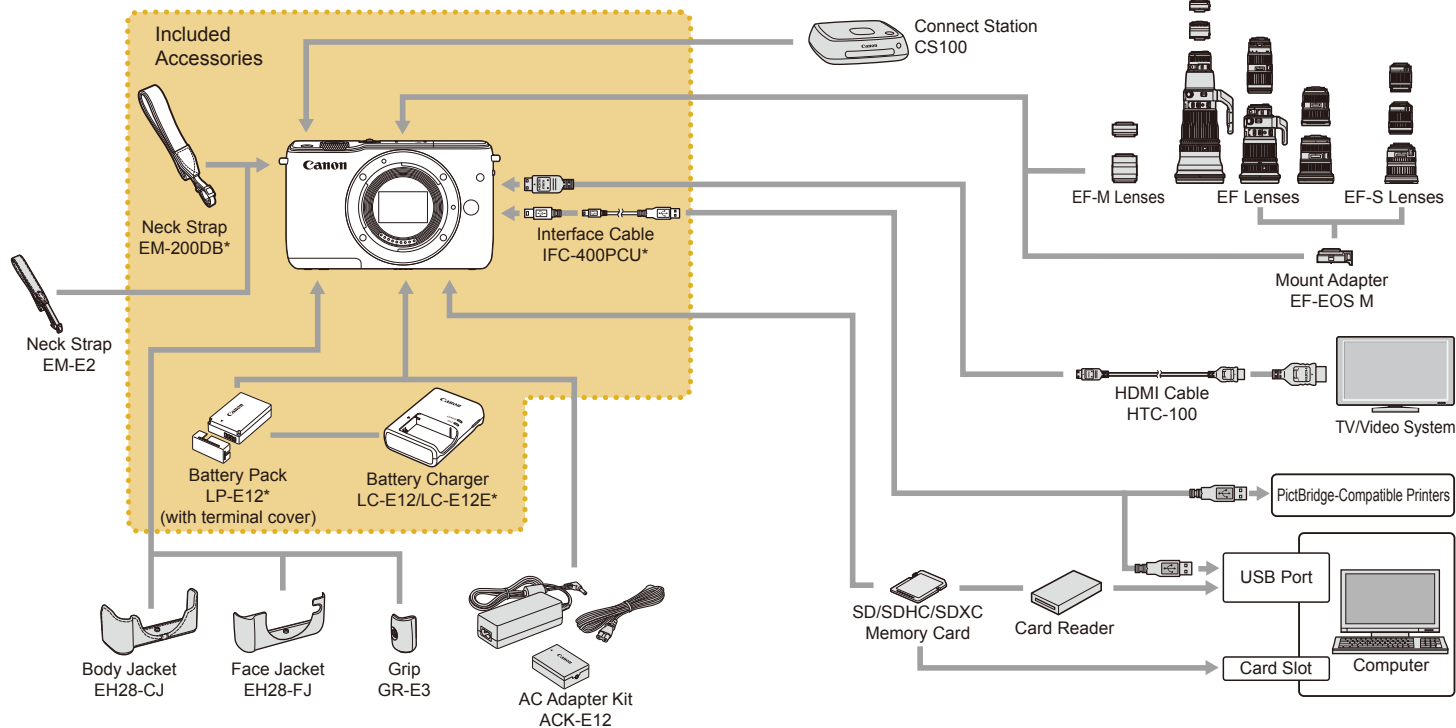
Accessories

Appendix

Index



System Map



* Also available for purchase separately.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



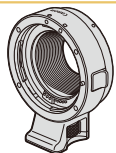
Optional Accessories

The following camera accessories are sold separately. Note that availability varies by area, and some accessories may no longer be available.

Lenses

EF-M, EF, and EF-S Lenses

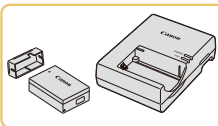
- Switch lenses to suit the subject or your preferred shooting style. Note that EF and EF-S lenses require Mount Adapter EF-EOS M.



Mount Adapter EF-EOS M

- Use this mount adapter when attaching EF or EF-S lenses.

Power Supplies

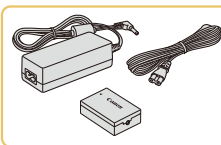


Battery Pack LP-E12

- Rechargeable lithium-ion battery

Battery Charger LC-E12/LC-E12E

- Charger for Battery Pack LP-E12



AC Adapter Kit ACK-E12

- For powering the camera using household power. Recommended when using the camera over extended periods, or when connecting the camera to a printer or computer. Cannot be used to charge the battery pack in the camera.



- The battery charger and AC adapter kit can be used in areas with 100 – 240 V AC power (50/60 Hz).
- For power outlets in a different format, use a commercially available adapter for the plug. Never use an electrical transformer designed for traveling, which may damage the battery pack.

Other Accessories



Body Jacket EH28-CJ

- Protects the camera from dust and scratches.



Face Jacket EH28-FJ

- Attach to the camera to give it a new look.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





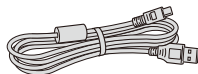
Grip GR-E3

- Enables you to hold the camera more securely. When using the grip, tighten the screw to attach the grip firmly to the camera.



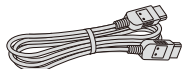
Neck Strap EM-E2

- A soft and comfortable neck strap.



Interface Cable IFC-400PCU

- For connecting the camera to a computer or printer.
- IFC-200U and IFC-500U are also compatible.



HDMI Cable HTC-100

- For connecting the camera to an HDMI input of a high-definition TV.

Printers



Canon-Brand PictBridge-Compatible Printers

- Even without using a computer, you can print images by connecting the camera directly to a printer. For details, visit your nearest Canon retailer.

Photo and Movie Storage



Connect Station CS100

- A media hub for storing camera images, viewing on a connected TV, printing wirelessly on a Wi-Fi-compatible printer, sharing over the Internet, and more.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Using Optional Accessories

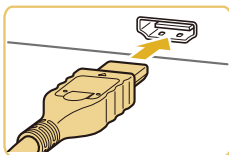
Playback on a TV

► Still Images ► Movies

Connecting the camera to an HDTV with the HDMI Cable HTC-100 (sold separately) enables you to view your shots on the larger screen of the TV. Movies shot at an image quality of [FHD 29.97P], [FHD 23.98P], [FHD 59.94P], [FHD 25.00P], or [FHD 50.00P] can be viewed in high definition.

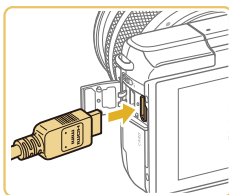
For details on connection or how to switch inputs, refer to the TV manual.

- 1 **Make sure the camera and TV are off.**



- 2 **Connect the camera to the TV.**

- On the TV, insert the cable plug fully into the HDMI input as shown.



- On the camera, open the terminal cover and insert the cable plug fully into the camera terminal.

- 3 **Turn the TV on and switch to external input.**

- Switch the TV input to the external input you connected the cable to in step 2.

- 4 **Turn the camera on.**

- Press the [▶] button to turn the camera on.
- Images from the camera are now displayed on the TV. (Nothing is displayed on the camera screen.)
- When finished, turn off the camera and TV before disconnecting the cable.



- Touch-screen operations are not supported while the camera is connected to a television.



- When the camera and TV are connected, you can also shoot while previewing shots on the larger screen of the TV. To shoot, follow the same steps as when using the camera screen. However, MF-Point Zoom (75) and MF Peaking (76) are not available.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

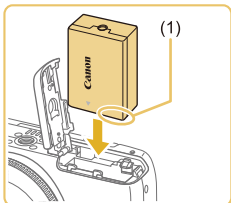


Powering the Camera with Household Power

► Still Images ► Movies

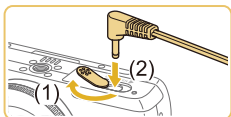
Powering the camera with AC Adapter Kit ACK-E12 (sold separately) eliminates the need to monitor the remaining battery level.

1 Make sure the camera is off.



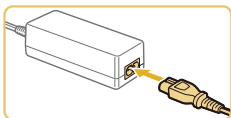
2 Insert the coupler.

- Follow step 1 in “Inserting the Battery Pack” (19) to open the cover.
- Holding the coupler with the terminals (1) facing as shown, insert the coupler just as you would a battery pack (following step 2 in “Inserting the Battery Pack” (19)).
- Follow step 3 in “Inserting the Battery Pack” (19) to close the cover.



3 Connect the adapter to the coupler.

- Open the cover and insert the adapter plug fully into the coupler.



4 Connect the power cord.

- Insert one end of the power cord into the compact power adapter, and then plug the other end into a power outlet.
- Turn the camera on and use it as desired.
- When finished, turn the camera off and unplug the power cord from the outlet.



- Do not disconnect the adapter or unplug the power cord while the camera is still on. This may erase your shots or damage the camera.
- Do not attach the adapter or adapter cord to other objects. Doing so could result in malfunction or damage to the product.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Using the Software

The software available for download from the Canon website is introduced below, with instructions for installation and saving images to a computer.

Software

After installing the software, you can do the following things on your computer.

- EOS Utility
 - Import images and change camera settings
- Digital Photo Professional
 - Browse, process, and edit photos, including RAW images
- Picture Style Editor
 - Edit Picture Styles and create and save Picture Style files
- Image Transfer Utility
 - Set up Image Sync (📖131) and receive images



- To view and edit movies on a computer, use preinstalled or commonly available software compatible with movies recorded by the camera.



- Image Transfer Utility can also be downloaded from the Image Sync settings page of CANON IMAGE GATEWAY.

Software Instruction Manual

Download software instruction manuals from the Canon website as needed.



- With a computer connected to the Internet, access <http://www.canon.com/icpd/>.
- Access the site for your country or region.

Checking Your Computer Environment

The software can be used on the following computers. For detailed system requirements and compatibility information, including support in new operating systems, visit the Canon website.

Operating System	Windows	Mac OS
	Windows 8/8.1	Mac OS X 10.10
	Windows 7 SP1	Mac OS X 10.9



- Check the Canon website for the latest system requirements, including supported OS versions.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Installing the Software

1 Download the software.

- With a computer connected to the Internet, access <http://www.canon.com/icpd/>.
- Access the site for your country or region.
- Download the software.

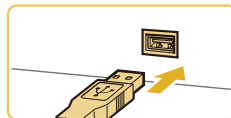
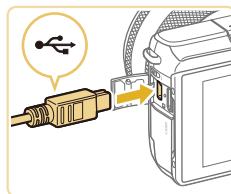
2 Click [Easy Installation] and follow the on-screen instructions.

- Double-click the downloaded file, and when the installation screen is displayed, click [Easy Installation].
- Follow the instructions displayed to complete installation.
- Installation may take some time, depending on computer performance and the Internet connection.
- Click [Finish] or [Restart] on the screen after installation.

Saving Images to a Computer

Use an interface cable (📖2) to connect the camera and save images to the computer.

Windows 7 and Mac OS X 10.10 are used here for the sake of illustration.



1 Connect the camera to the computer.

- With the camera turned off, open the cover (1). With the smaller plug of the cable in the orientation shown, insert the plug fully into the camera terminal (2).
- Insert the larger plug of the cable in the computer's USB port. For details about USB connections on the computer, refer to the computer user manual.

2 Turn on the camera and display EOS Utility.

- Press the [📺] button to turn the camera on.
- Windows: Double-click the EOS Utility icon on the desktop.
- Mac OS: Click the EOS Utility icon in the Dock.
- From now on, EOS Utility will start up automatically when you connect the camera to the computer and turn on the camera.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



3 Save the images to the computer.

- Click [Download images to computer] > [Start automatic download].
- Once images are saved to the Pictures folder on the computer (in separate folders named by date), Digital Photo Professional starts up automatically and displays the imported images.
- After images are saved, close EOS Utility, press the ON/OFF button to turn the camera off, and unplug the cable.
- Use Digital Photo Professional to view images you save to a computer. To view movies, use preinstalled or commonly available software compatible with movies recorded by the camera.

- The first time you connect the camera to the computer, drivers will be installed, so it may take a few minutes until camera images are accessible.
- Although you can save images to a computer simply by connecting your camera to the computer without using the software, the following limitations apply.
 - It may take a few minutes after you connect the camera to the computer until camera images are accessible.
 - Images shot in vertical orientation may be saved in horizontal orientation.
 - RAW images (or JPEG images recorded with RAW images) may not be saved.
 - Image protection settings may be cleared from images saved to a computer.
 - Some problems may occur when saving images or image information, depending on the operating system version, the software in use, or image file sizes.

Printing Images

► Still Images ► Movies

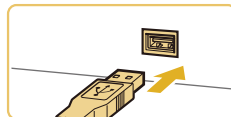
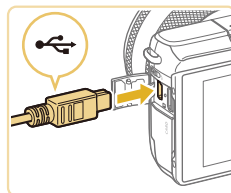
Your shots can easily be printed by connecting the camera to a printer. On the camera, you can specify images to set up batch printing, prepare orders for photo development services, and prepare orders or print images for photobooks.

A Canon SELPHY CP series compact photo printer is used here for the sake of illustration. Screens displayed and available functions vary by printer. Also refer to the printer manual for additional information.

Easy Print

► Still Images ► Movies

Easily print your shots by connecting the camera to a PictBridge-compatible printer (sold separately) with an interface cable (12).



1 Make sure the camera and printer are off.

2 Connect the camera to the printer.

- Open the terminal cover. Holding the smaller cable plug in the orientation shown, insert the plug fully into the camera terminal.
- Connect the larger cable plug to the printer. For other connection details, refer to the printer manual.

3 Turn the printer on.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

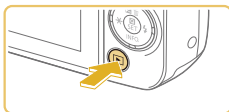
Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





4 Turn the camera on.

- Press the [▶] button to turn the camera on.

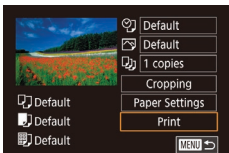
5 Choose an image.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an image.



6 Access the printing screen.

- Press the [Ⓢ] button, choose [Print], and press the [Ⓢ] button again.



7 Print the image.

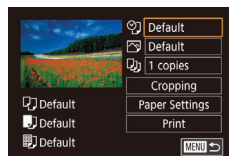
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Print], and then press the [Ⓢ] button.
- Printing now begins.
- To print other images, repeat the above procedures starting from step 5 after printing is finished.
- When you are finished printing, turn the camera and printer off and disconnect the cable.



- For Canon-brand PictBridge-compatible printers (sold separately), see "Printers" (149).

Configuring Print Settings

► Still Images ► Movies



1 Access the printing screen.

- Follow steps 1 – 6 in "Easy Print" (154) to access this screen.

2 Configure the settings.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an item, and then press the [Ⓢ] button. On the next screen, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an option, and then press the [Ⓢ] button to return to the printing screen.

	Default	Matches current printer settings.
	Date	Prints images with the date added.
	File No.	Prints images with the file number added.
	Both	Prints images with both the date and file number added.
	Off	–
	Default	Matches current printer settings.
	Off	–
	On	Uses information from the time of shooting to print under optimal settings.
	Red-Eye 1	Corrects red-eye.
	No. of Copies	Choose the number of copies to print.
Cropping	–	Specify a desired image area to print (156).
Paper Settings	–	Specify the paper size, layout, and other details (156).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

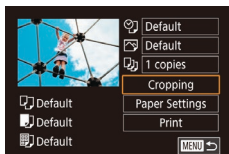
Index



Cropping Images before Printing

► Still Images ► Movies

By cropping images before printing, you can print a desired image area instead of the entire image.



1 Choose [Cropping].

- After following step 1 in “Configuring Print Settings” (155) to access the printing screen, choose [Cropping] and press the [OK] button.
- A cropping frame is now displayed, indicating the image area to print.

2 Adjust the cropping frame as needed.

- To resize the frame, pinch in or out (98) on the screen.
- To move the frame, press the [▲][▼][◀][▶] buttons.
- To rotate the frame, turn the [Sun] dial.
- When finished, press the [OK] button.

3 Print the image.

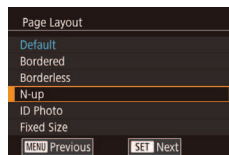
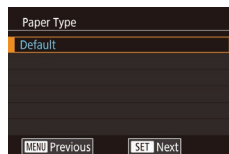
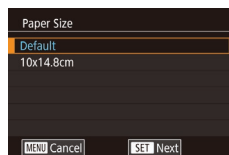
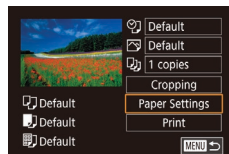
- Follow step 7 in “Easy Print” (154) to print.



- Cropping may not be possible at small image sizes, or at some aspect ratios.

Choosing Paper Size and Layout before Printing

► Still Images ► Movies



1 Choose [Paper Settings].

- After following step 1 in “Configuring Print Settings” (155) to access the printing screen, choose [Paper Settings] and press the [OK] button.

2 Choose a paper size.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an option, and then press the [OK] button.

3 Choose a type of paper.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an option, and then press the [OK] button.

4 Choose a layout.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an option, and then press the [OK] button.
- When choosing [N-up], press the [OK] button. On the next screen, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the number of images per sheet, and then press the [OK] button.

5 Print the image.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Available Layout Options

Default	Matches current printer settings.
Bordered	Prints with blank space around the image.
Borderless	Borderless, edge-to-edge printing.
N-up	Choose how many images to print per sheet.
ID Photo	Prints images for identification purposes. Only available for images with a recording pixel setting of L and an aspect ratio of 3:2.
Fixed Size	Choose the print size. Choose from 3.5 x 5 in., postcard, or wide-format prints.

Printing ID Photos

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

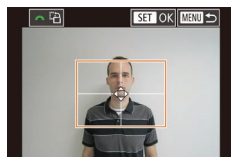
1 Choose [ID Photo].

- Following steps 1 – 4 in “Choosing Paper Size and Layout before Printing” (156), choose [ID Photo] and press the [OK] button.



2 Choose the long and short side length.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an item, and then press the [OK] button. On the next screen, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose the length, and then press the [OK] button.



3 Choose the printing area.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons on the screen in step 2 to choose [Cropping].

- Follow step 2 in “Cropping Images before Printing” (156) to choose the printing area.

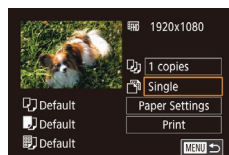
4 Print the image.

Printing Movie Scenes

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

1 Access the printing screen.

- Follow steps 1 – 6 in “Easy Print” (154) to choose a movie. The screen at left is displayed.



2 Choose a printing method.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Still], and then press the [OK] button. On the next screen, press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose an option, and then press the [OK] button to return to the printing screen.

3 Print the image.

Movie Printing Options

Single	Prints the current scene as a still image.
Sequence	Prints a series of scenes, a certain interval apart, on a single sheet of paper. You can also print the folder number, file number, and elapsed time for the frame by setting [Caption] to [On].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index





- To cancel printing in progress, press the [Q] button, choose [OK], and then press the [Q] button again.
- After displaying a scene to print as described in steps 2 – 5 of “Viewing” (p.91), you can also access the screen in step 1 here by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [P] in the movie control panel and then pressing the [Q] button.

Adding Images to the Print List (DPOF)

► Still Images ► Movies

Batch printing (p.160) and ordering prints from a photo development service can be set up on the camera. Choose up to 998 images on a memory card and configure relevant settings, such as the number of copies, as follows. The printing information you prepare this way will conform to DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) standards.

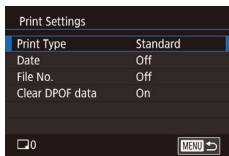


- RAW images cannot be included in print list.

Configuring Print Settings

► Still Images ► Movies

Specify the printing format, whether to add the date or file number, and other settings as follows. These settings apply to all images in the print list.



- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Print settings] on the [P2] tab, and then press the [Q] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Print Settings], and then press the [Q] button. On the next screen, choose and configure items as needed (p.32).

Print Type	Standard	One image is printed per sheet.
	Index	Smaller versions of multiple images are printed per sheet.
	Both	Both standard and index formats are printed.
Date	On	Images are printed with the shooting date.
	Off	–
File No.	On	Images are printed with the file number.
	Off	–
Clear DPOF data	On	All image print list settings are cleared after printing.
	Off	–



- Not all of your DPOF settings may be applied in printing by the printer or photo development service, in some cases.
- [!] may be displayed on the camera to warn you that the memory card has print settings that were configured on another camera. Changing the print settings using this camera may overwrite all previous settings.
- Setting [Date] to [On] may cause some printers to print the date twice.



- Specifying [Index] will prevent you from choosing [On] for both [Date] and [File No.] at the same time.
- Index printing is not available on some Canon-brand PictBridge-compatible printers (sold separately).
- The date is printed in a format matching setting details in MENU (p.32) > [P2] tab > [Date/Time] (p.20).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

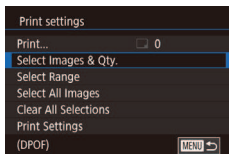
Appendix

Index



Setting Up Printing for Individual Images

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies



1 Choose [Select Images & Qty.].

- Press the [MENU] button, choose [Print settings] on the [P2] tab, and then press the [OK] button.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Select Images & Qty.], and then press the [OK] button (p32).

2 Choose an image.

- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose an image, and then press the [OK] button.
- You can now specify the number of copies.
- If you specify index printing for the image, it is labeled with a [✓] icon. To cancel index printing for the image, press the [OK] button again. [✓] is no longer displayed.

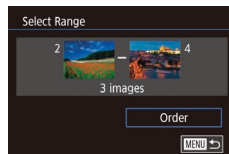


3 Specify the number of prints.

- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to specify the number of prints (up to 99).
- To set up printing for other images and specify the number of prints, repeat steps 2 – 3.
- Printing quantity cannot be specified for index prints. You can only choose which images to print, by following step 2.
- When finished, press the [MENU] button to return to the menu screen.

Setting Up Printing for a Range of Images

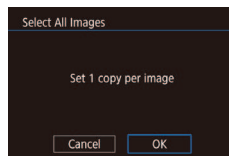
▶ Still Images ▶ Movies



- Following step 1 in “Setting Up Printing for Individual Images” (p159), choose [Select Range] and press the [OK] button.
- Follow steps 2 – 3 in “Selecting a Range” (p100) to specify images.
- Press the [▲][▼] buttons to choose [Order], and then press the [OK] button.

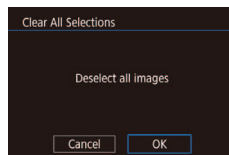
Setting Up Printing for All Images

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies



- Following step 1 in “Setting Up Printing for Individual Images” (p159), choose [Select All Images] and press the [OK] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.

Clearing All Images from the Print List



- Following step 1 in “Setting Up Printing for Individual Images” (p159), choose [Clear All Selections] and press the [OK] button.
- Press the [◀][▶] buttons to choose [OK], and then press the [OK] button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

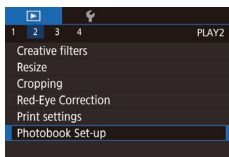


Adding Images to a Photobook

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies

Photobooks can be set up on the camera by choosing up to 998 images on a memory card and importing them into the software on your computer, where they are stored in their own folder. This is convenient when ordering printed photobooks online or printing photobooks with your own printer.

Choosing a Selection Method



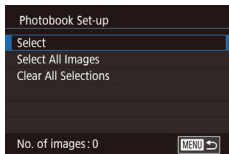
- Press the **[MENU]** button, choose [Photobook Set-up] on the **[2]** tab, and then choose how you will select images.



- [!]** may be displayed on the camera to warn you that the memory card has print settings that were configured on another camera. Changing the print settings using this camera may overwrite all previous settings.

Adding Images Individually

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies



1 Choose [Select].

- Following the procedure in “Choosing a Selection Method” (160), choose [Select] and press the **[G]** button.

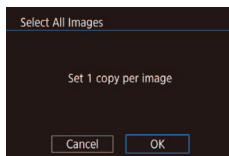


2 Choose an image.

- Press the **[◀][▶]** buttons to choose an image, and then press the **[G]** button.
- [✓]** is displayed.
- To remove the image from the photobook, press the **[G]** button again. **[✓]** is no longer displayed.
- Repeat this process to specify other images.
- When finished, press the **[MENU]** button to return to the menu screen.

Adding All Images to a Photobook

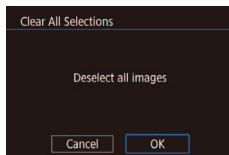
▶ Still Images ▶ Movies



- Following the procedure in “Choosing a Selection Method” (160), choose [Select All Images] and press the **[G]** button.
- Press the **[◀][▶]** buttons to choose [OK], and then press the **[G]** button.

Clearing All Images from the Print List

▶ Still Images ▶ Movies



- Following the procedure in “Choosing a Selection Method” (160), choose [Clear All Selections] and press the **[G]** button.
- Press the **[◀][▶]** buttons to choose [OK], and then press the **[G]** button.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Appendix

Helpful information when using the camera

Troubleshooting

If you think there is a problem with the camera, first check the following. If the items below do not solve your problem, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

Power

Nothing happens when the ON/OFF button is pressed.

- Confirm that the battery pack is charged (18).
- Confirm that the battery pack is inserted facing the correct way (19).
- Confirm that the memory card cover and battery cover are fully closed (19, 19).
- Dirty battery terminals reduce battery performance. Try cleaning the terminals with a cotton swab and reinserting the battery pack a few times.

The battery pack runs out of power quickly.

- Battery performance decreases at low temperatures. Try warming the battery pack a little by putting it in your pocket, for example, ensuring that the terminals do not touch any metal objects.
- Dirty battery terminals reduce battery performance. Try cleaning the terminals with a cotton swab and reinserting the battery pack a few times.
- If these measures do not help and the battery pack still runs out of power soon after charging, it has reached the end of its life. Purchase a new battery pack.

The battery pack is swollen.

- Battery swelling is normal and does not pose any safety concerns. However, if battery swelling prevents the battery pack from fitting in the camera, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

The camera makes a noise when turned on or off with an EF-M lens attached.

- When you turn off the camera, the aperture narrows to prevent light from entering the camera. This protects internal components.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shooting

Cannot shoot.

- The camera cannot shoot unless subjects are in focus. Wait until the frame turns green, as you press the shutter button halfway and allow the camera to focus, before attempting to shoot.
- In Playback mode (📖91), press the shutter button halfway (📖29).

Strange display on the screen under low light (📖30).

Strange display on the screen when shooting.

- Note that the following display problems are not recorded in still images but are recorded in movies.
 - The screen may flicker and horizontal banding may appear under fluorescent or LED lighting.

⚡ flashes on the screen when the shutter button is pressed, and shooting is not possible (📖38).

📷 is displayed when the shutter button is pressed halfway (📖38).

- Shoot with image stabilization (📖79).
- Raise the flash and set the flash mode to ⚡ (📖76).
- Increase the ISO speed (📖65).
- Mount the camera on a tripod or take other measures to keep it still. In this case, also disable image stabilization (📖79).

Shots are out of focus.

- Shoot with auto focus (AF).
- Press the shutter button halfway to focus on subjects before pressing it all the way down to shoot (📖29).
- Focusing is not possible if you are closer to the subject than the minimum focusing distance of the lens. To determine the minimum focusing distance, check the lens. The lens minimum focusing distance is measured from the [⊖] (focal plane) mark on the top of the camera to the subject.
- Set [AF-assist beam (LED) firing] to [0: Enable] (📖89).
- Confirm that you have deactivated any features you do not wish to use, such as manual focus.
- Try shooting with focus lock (📖72).

Shots are blurry.

- Blurring may occur more often when Touch Shutter is used to shoot, depending on shooting conditions. Hold the camera still when shooting.

AF frames are orange and subjects remain out of focus when I press the shutter button halfway.

- Before you press the shutter button halfway, try centering higher-contrast portions of subjects. Otherwise, try pressing the shutter button halfway repeatedly. These approaches may help the camera focus, which is indicated by a green AF frame.

Subjects in shots look too dark.

- Raise the flash and set the flash mode to ⚡ (📖76).
- Adjust brightness by using exposure compensation (📖63).
- Adjust brightness by using the Auto Lighting Optimizer (📖66).
- Use AE lock or partial metering (📖63, 📖64).

Subjects look too bright, highlights are washed-out.

- Lower the flash and set the flash mode to ⚡ (📖36).
- Adjust brightness by using exposure compensation (📖63).
- Use AE lock or partial metering (📖63, 📖64).
- Reduce the lighting on subjects.

Shots look too dark despite the flash firing (📖38).

- Shoot within flash range (📖190).
- Adjust brightness by using flash exposure compensation or changing the flash output level (📖77, 📖86).
- Increase the ISO speed (📖65).

Subjects in flash shots look too bright, highlights are washed-out.

- Shoot within flash range (📖190).
- Lower the flash and set the flash mode to ⚡ (📖36).
- Adjust brightness by using flash exposure compensation or changing the flash output level (📖77, 📖86).

White spots appear in flash shots.

- This is caused by light from the flash reflecting off dust or airborne particles.

Shots look grainy.

- Lower the ISO speed (📖65).
- High ISO speeds in some shooting modes may cause grainy images (📖52).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shots are affected by linear noise or moiré.

- Some subjects make shots more susceptible to linear noise or moiré. This is more likely to happen under the following conditions.
 - Subjects have fine horizontal stripes or checkered patterns.

- The sun, lights, or other sources of bright light are visible on the shooting screen, or are nearby.

In this case, taking the following steps may reduce noise or moiré.

- Resize the subject by changing the focusing distance or zooming in or out.
 - Recompose the shot to keep sources of bright light off the shooting screen.
 - Attach a lens hood to prevent bright light from shining into the lens.
- Images may also be affected by linear noise or moiré if you shift or tilt a TS-E lens.

Subjects are affected by red-eye.

- Set [Red-eye reduc.] to [On] (📖47). The red-eye reduction lamp (📖4) will light up for flash shots. For best results, have subjects look at the red-eye reduction lamp. Also try increasing the lighting in indoor scenes and shooting at closer range.
- Edit images using red-eye correction (📖108).

Recording to the memory card takes too long, or continuous shooting is slower.

- Use the camera to perform low-level formatting of the memory card (📖139).

Continuous shooting suddenly stops.

- Continuous shooting stops automatically to protect the camera after about 1,000 shots are taken at one time. Release the shutter button a moment before you resume shooting.

Shooting settings or Quick Set menu settings are not available.

- Available setting items vary by shooting mode. Refer to "Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode", "Quick Set Menu", "Shooting Tab", "C.Fn Tab", "INFO. Quick Control", and "Set Up Tab" (📖170 – 📖180).

Touch AF or Touch Shutter does not work.

- Touch AF or Touch Shutter will not work if you touch the edges of the screen. Touch closer to the center of the screen.

Shooting Movies

The elapsed time shown is incorrect, or recording is interrupted.

- Use the camera to format the memory card, or switch to a card that supports high-speed recording. Note that even if the elapsed time display is incorrect, the length of movies on the memory card corresponds to the actual recording time.

A "full buffer" warning (📖167) is displayed and shooting stops automatically.

- The camera's internal memory buffer filled up as the camera could not record to the memory card quickly enough. Try one of the following measures.
 - Use the camera to perform low-level formatting of the memory card (📖139).
 - Lower the image quality (📖46).
 - Switch to a memory card that supports high-speed recording.

Subjects look distorted.

- Subjects that pass in front of the camera quickly may look distorted. This is not a malfunction.

The movie has still moments.

- With some lenses, movies may seem to be missing frames at moments when the brightness changes significantly.

Playback

Playback is not possible.

- Image or movie playback may not be possible if a computer is used to rename files or alter the folder structure.

Playback stops, or audio skips.

- Switch to a memory card that you have performed low-level formatting on with the camera (📖139).
- There may be brief interruptions when playing movies copied to memory cards that have slow read speeds.
- When movies are played on a computer, frames may be dropped and audio may skip if computer performance is inadequate.

Sound is not played during movies.

- Adjust the volume (📖91) if the sound in the movie is faint.
- No sound is played for movies shot in [📷] mode (📖56) because audio is not recorded in this mode.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Computer

Cannot transfer images to a computer.

- When attempting to transfer images to the computer via a cable, try reducing the transfer speed as follows.
 - Press the **[]** button to enter Playback mode. Hold the **[MENU]** button down as you press the **[▲]** and **[]** buttons at the same time. On the next screen, press the **[◀]****[▶]** buttons to choose **[B]**, and then press the **[]** button.

Wi-Fi

Cannot access the Wi-Fi menu.

- The Wi-Fi menu is not available in Shooting mode. Switch to Playback mode and try again.
- In Playback mode, the Wi-Fi menu cannot be accessed during magnified display or index display. Switch to single-image display and try again. Similarly, the Wi-Fi menu cannot be accessed during filtered image display according to specified conditions. Cancel filtered image playback.
- The Wi-Fi menu cannot be accessed while the camera is connected to a printer via a cable. Disconnect the cable.

Cannot add a device/destination.

- A total of 20 items of connection information can be added to the camera. Erase unneeded connection information from the camera first, and then add new devices/destinations (136).
- Use a computer or smartphone to register Web services (121).
- To add a smartphone, first install the dedicated application on your smartphone (113).
- Do not use the camera near sources of Wi-Fi signal interference, such as microwave ovens, Bluetooth devices, or other equipment operating on the 2.4 GHz band.
- Bring the camera closer to the other device you are trying to connect to (such as the access point), and make sure there are no objects between the devices.

Cannot connect to the access point.

- Confirm that the access point channel is set to a channel supported by the camera (188). Note that instead of auto channel assignment, it is advisable to specify a supported channel manually.

Cannot send images.

- The destination device has insufficient storage space. Increase the storage space on the destination device and resend the images.
- The write-protect switch of the memory card in the destination camera is set to the locked position. Slide the write-protect switch to the unlocked position.
- RAW images cannot be sent to the camera or displayed on TV sets. RAW images selected for importing to a smartphone are imported as JPEG images. Note that Image Sync can also send RAW images.
- Images are not sent to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY or other Web services if you move or rename image files or folders on the computer that received images sent using Image Sync via an access point (131). Before moving or renaming these image files or folders on the computer, make sure the images have already been sent to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY or other Web services.

Cannot resize images for sending.

- Images cannot be resized to be bigger than the recording pixel setting of their original size.
- Movies cannot be resized.

Images take a long time to send./The wireless connection is disrupted.

- Multiple images may take a long time to send. Try resizing the image to reduce sending time (130).
- Movies may take a long time to send.
- Do not use the camera near sources of Wi-Fi signal interference, such as microwave ovens, Bluetooth devices, or other equipment operating on the 2.4 GHz band. Note that images may take a long time to send even when **[T,]** is displayed.
- Bring the camera closer to the other device you are trying to connect to (such as the access point), and make sure there are no objects between the devices.

Want to erase Wi-Fi connection information before disposing of the camera or giving it to someone else.

- Reset the Wi-Fi settings (137).

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



On-Screen Messages

If an error message is displayed, respond as follows.

Shooting or Playback

No memory card

- The memory card may be inserted facing the wrong way. Reinsert the memory card facing the correct way (19).

Memory card locked

- The write-protect switch of the memory card is set to the locked position. Switch the write-protect switch to the unlocked position (19).

Cannot record!

- Shooting was attempted without a memory card in the camera. To shoot, insert a memory card facing the correct way (19).

Memory card error (139)

- If the same error message is displayed even after you have formatted a supported memory card (2) and have inserted it facing the correct way (19), contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

Insufficient space on card

- There is not enough free space on the memory card to shoot (35, 48, 62) or edit images (106). Either erase unneeded images (102) or insert a memory card with enough free space (19).

Touch AF unavailable

- Touch AF is not available in the current shooting mode (170).

Touch AF canceled

- The subject selected for Touch AF can no longer be detected (72).

Charge the battery (18)

No Image.

- The memory card does not contain any images that can be displayed.

Protected! (99)

Unidentified Image/Incompatible JPEG/Image too large./Cannot play back MOV/Cannot play back MP4

- Unsupported or corrupt images cannot be displayed.
- It may not be possible to display images that were edited or renamed on a computer, or images shot with another camera.

Cannot magnify!/Cannot rotate/Cannot modify image/Cannot modify/Unselectable image.

- The following functions may be unavailable for images that were renamed or already edited on a computer, or images shot with another camera. Note that starred (*) functions are not available for movies. Magnify* (98), Rotate* (104), Rating (105), Edit* (106), Print List* (158), and Photobook Set-up* (160).

Invalid selection range

- When specifying a range for image selection (100, 103, 159), you attempted to choose an initial image that was after the final image, or vice-versa.

Exceeded selection limit

- More than 998 images were selected for Print List (158) or Photobook Set-up (160). Choose 998 images or less.
- Print List (158) or Photobook Set-up (160) settings could not be saved correctly. Reduce the number of selected images and try again.
- You attempted to choose more than 500 images in Protect (99), Erase (102), Rating (105), Print List (158), or Photobook Set-up (160).

Naming error!

- The folder could not be created or images could not be recorded, because the highest supported folder number (999) for storing images on the card has been reached and the highest supported image number (9999) for images in folders has been reached. On the [1] tab of the menu (32), change [File Numbering] to [Auto Reset] (138), or format the memory card (139).

Lens Error

- There is a communication problem between the camera and lens. Clean the lens contacts and mount the lens correctly on the camera.
- Frequent display of this error message may indicate camera damage. In this case, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



A camera error was detected (*error number*)

- If this error message is displayed immediately after a shot, the image may not have been saved. Switch to Playback mode to check for the image.
- Frequent display of this error message may indicate camera damage. In this case, write down the error number (*Exx*) and contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

File Error

- Correct printing (📖 154) may not be possible for photos from other cameras or images that have been altered using computer software, even if the camera is connected to the printer.

Print error

- Check the paper size setting (📖 156). If this error message is displayed when the setting is correct, restart the printer and complete the setting on the camera again.

Ink absorber full

- Contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk to request assistance with ink absorber replacement.

Wi-Fi

Connection failed

- No access points were recognized. Check the access point settings (📖 118).
- A device could not be found. Turn the camera off and on again, and retry the connection.
- Check the device you want to connect to and make sure it is ready for connection.

Cannot determine access point

- The WPS buttons on numerous access points were pressed simultaneously. Try reconnecting again.

No access points found

- Check to make sure that the access point is turned on.
- When connecting to an access point manually, make sure that you entered the correct SSID.

Incorrect password/Incorrect Wi-Fi security settings

- Check the access point security settings (📖 118).

IP address conflict

- Reset the IP address so that it does not conflict with another.

Disconnected/Receiving failed/Sending failed

- You may be in an environment where Wi-Fi signals are obstructed.
- Avoid using the camera's Wi-Fi function around microwave ovens, Bluetooth devices, and other devices that operate on the 2.4 GHz band.
- Bring the camera closer to the other device you are trying to connect to (such as the access point), and make sure there are no objects between the devices.
- Check the connected device to make sure it is not experiencing errors.

Sending failed

Memory card error

- If the same error message is displayed even when you have inserted a formatted memory card facing the correct way, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.

Receiving failed

Insufficient space on card

- There is not enough free space on the memory card in the target camera to receive images. Erase images to create space on the memory card, or insert a memory card with sufficient space.

Receiving failed

Memory card locked

- The write-protect switch of the memory card in the camera to receive the images is set to the locked position. Slide the write-protect switch to the unlocked position.

Receiving failed

Naming error!

- When the highest folder number (999), and the highest image number (9999) have been reached on the receiving camera, images cannot be received.

Insufficient space on server

- Delete unnecessary images uploaded to CANON iMAGE GATEWAY to create space.
- Save the images sent via Image Sync (📖 131) to your computer.

Check network settings

- Check to make sure your computer can connect to the Internet with the current network settings.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

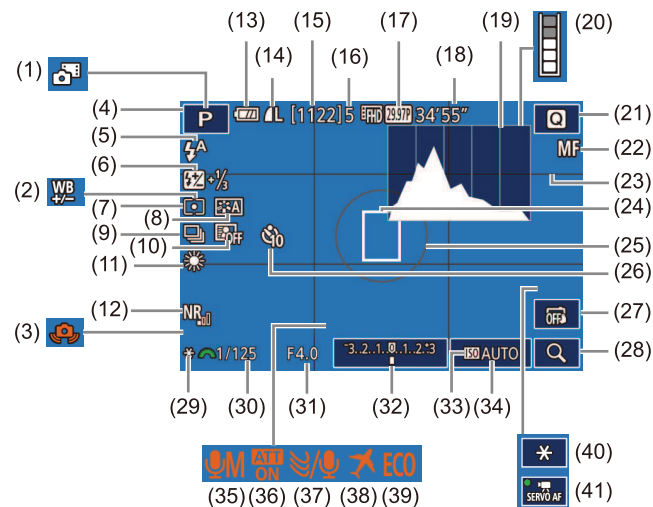
Appendix

Index



On-Screen Information

When Shooting



- (1) Hybrid Auto mode (📖37)
- (2) White balance correction (📖68)
- (3) Camera shake warning (📖38)
- (4) Shooting mode (📖170), Scene icon (📖39)
- (5) Flash mode (📖76)
- (6) Flash exposure compensation / Flash output level (📖77, 📖86)
- (7) Metering mode (📖64)
- (8) Picture Style (📖69)
- (9) Continuous shooting (📖42)
- (10) Auto Lighting Optimizer (📖66)
- (11) White balance (📖67)

- (12) High ISO speed noise reduction (📖81)
- (13) Battery level (📖167)
- (14) Still image quality (compression, recording pixel setting) (📖43)
- (15) Recordable shots
- (16) Maximum continuous shots
- (17) Movie quality (recording pixel, frame rate) (📖46)
- (18) Remaining time
- (19) Histogram (📖94)
- (20) Buffer warning (📖163)
- (21) Quick Set menu (📖31)
- (22) Manual focus (📖75)
- (23) Grid lines (📖30)
- (24) AF frame (📖71)
- (25) Metering frame (📖64)
- (26) Self-timer (📖40)
- (27) Touch Shutter (📖42)
- (28) Magnify (📖75)
- (29) AE lock (📖64)
- (30) Shutter speed (📖83)
- (31) Aperture value (📖84)
- (32) Exposure compensation (📖63)
- (33) Highlight tone priority (📖66)
- (34) ISO speed (📖65)
- (35) Audio recording mode (📖60)
- (36) Attenuator (📖61)
- (37) Wind filter (📖61)
- (38) Time zone (📖141)
- (39) Eco mode (📖140)
- (40) Movie AE lock (📖60)
- (41) Movie Servo AF (📖60)

Battery Level

An on-screen icon or message indicates the battery charge level.

Display	Details
	Sufficient charge
	Slightly depleted, but sufficient
 [Charge the battery]	Nearly depleted—charge the battery pack soon
	Depleted—charge the battery pack immediately

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

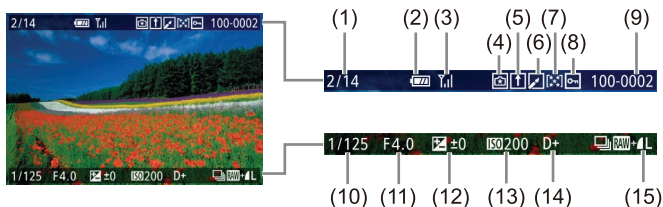
Appendix

Index



During Playback

Info Display 1

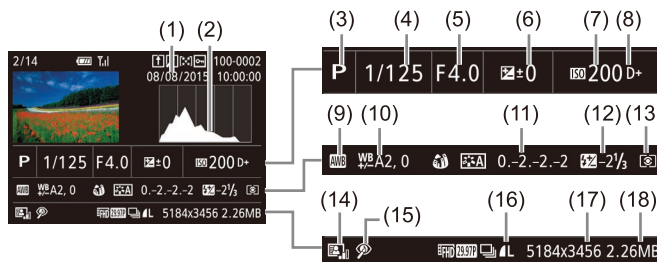


- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (1) Current image / Total images | (8) Protection |
| (2) Battery level | (9) Folder number - File number |
| (3) Wi-Fi signal strength | (10) Shutter speed |
| (4) Settings can be applied to mode | (11) Aperture value |
| (5) Image Sync complete | (12) Exposure compensation level |
| (6) Edited* | (13) ISO speed |
| (7) Rating | (14) Highlight tone priority |
| | (15) Image quality*2 |

*1 Displayed for images with a creative filter, resizing, cropping, or red-eye correction applied.

*2 Cropped images are labeled with [C].

Info Display 2



- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (1) Shooting date/time | (10) White balance correction |
| (2) Histogram | (11) Picture Style setting details |
| (3) Shooting mode | (12) Flash exposure compensation |
| (4) Shutter speed | (13) Metering mode |
| (5) Aperture value | (14) Auto Lighting Optimizer |
| (6) Exposure compensation level | (15) Red-eye correction |
| (7) ISO speed | (16) Image quality* |
| (8) Highlight tone priority | (17) Recording pixel setting |
| (9) White balance | (18) Image size |

* Cropped images are labeled with [C].

Info Display 3

Shows the lens name, focal length, and an RGB histogram. Note that long lens names may not be fully displayed. Information on the top of the screen is the same as for Info Display 2.

Info Display 4

Shows Picture Style information. Information on the top of the screen is the same as for Info Display 2.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Info Display 5

Shows noise-reduction settings for long exposures and high ISO speeds. Information on the top of the screen is the same as for Info Display 2.

Info Display 6

Shows lens correction data and information about peripheral illumination and chromatic aberration correction. Information on the top of the screen is the same as for Info Display 2.

Summary of Movie Control Panel

The following operations are available on the movie control panel, accessed as described in “Viewing” (91).

	Shown when the camera is connected to a PictBridge-compatible printer (154).
	Play
	Slow Motion (Press the [◀][▶] buttons to adjust the playback speed. No sound is played.)
	Skip Backward* or Previous Clip (111) (To continue skipping backward, keep holding down the [⏮] button.)
	Previous Frame (For fast-rewind, keep holding down the [⏮] button.)
	Next Frame (For fast-forward, keep holding down the [⏭] button.)
	Skip Forward* or Next Clip (111) (To continue skipping forward, keep holding down the [⏭] button.)
	Erase Clip (displayed when a digest movie is selected, 111)
	Edit (109)

* Displays the frame approx. 4 sec. before or after the current frame.



- During movie playback, you can skip back or forward (or to the previous or next clip) by pressing the [◀][▶] buttons.
- To switch frames, touch the scrollbar or drag left or right.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Functions and Menu Tables

Functions Available in Each Shooting Mode

Shooting Mode Function																											
			M	Av	Tv	P										HDR											
Exposure Compensation (📖63)		–	○	○	○	○	–	*1	*1	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
ISO Speed (📖65)	AUTO	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
	100 – 6400	–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○			
	12800	–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–			
Flash (📖76)	Auto	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	–	○	–	○	–	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–		
	On	–	○	○	○	○	–	○	○	○	–	○	–	○	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–		
	Slow Synchro	*2	–	○	–	○	*2	○	–	–	–	–	–	*2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–			
	Off	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		
Flash Exposure Compensation (📖77)		–	○	○	○	○	–	*1	*1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		
Flash Output Level (📖86)		–	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		
Aperture Value (📖84)		–	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○		
Shutter Speed (📖83)		–	○	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○		
Program Shift (📖64)		–	–	–	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		
AE Lock (📖60, 📖64), FE Lock (📖78)		–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	*3	*3			
AE Lock (during recording), Exposure Compensation (📖60)		–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		

*1 Adjusted to suit the [Brightness] setting.

*2 Not available, but switches to in some cases.

*3 Only AE lock.

O Available or set automatically. – Not available.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shooting Mode Function																										
			M	Av	Tv	P										HDR										
Move AF Frame (72)		–	O	O	O	O	–	O	–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	–	–	–	O	O	O	
Touch AF (72)		O	O	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	–	–	–	O	O	O	
Magnified Display (75)		–	O	O	O	O	–	O	–	O	O	O	–	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		
Touch Shutter (42)		O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	*4	O	O	–	O	O	O	–	–	
Still Image Shooting When Recording Movies (59)* ⁵		O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	O	O	
Change Display (30, 63)	Info display 1/No info display	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
	Info display 2/INFO. Quick Control screen	–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O		

*4 Only available for shooting. Subject designation not available.

O Available or set automatically. – Not available.

*5 Stills are captured at the same aspect ratio as movies.

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Quick Set Menu

Function		Shooting Mode																										
				M	Av	Tv	P										HDR											
AF method (📖71)			O	O	O	O	O	O	*1	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	–	O	O	O	O	O		
			–	O	O	O	O	O	–	*1	–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
AF operation (📖73)	ONESHOT		O	O	O	O	O	O	*1	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
	SERVO		–	O	O	O	O	O	–	*1	–	–	–	–	O	–	–	O	–	O	O	–	O	–	O	–		
Image quality (📖43)			For details, see "Shooting Tab" (📖174).																									
Movie rec. size (📖46)	When Set to NTSC		O	O	O	O	O	O	*2	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	O	O		
			O	O	O	O	O	O	*2	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	*3	O	O	O	O	O		
	When Set to PAL		O	O	O	O	O	O	*2	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	O	O		
			O	O	O	O	O	O	*2	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	*3	O	O	O	O	O		
Drive Mode (📖42)			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
			O	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	O	O	O	O	–	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O		
Self-Timer (📖40)			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
Self-Timer Settings			O	O	O	O	O	O	–	–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
White balance (📖67)			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
			–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O		
			–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–		
WB Correction (📖68)			–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O		

*1 Functions can be configured on the [2] tab.

*2 Functions can be configured on the [5] tab.

*3 Synchronizes with the aspect ratio setting and is automatically set (📖56).

O Available or set automatically. – Not available.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Function		Shooting Mode		📷																								📹	
		A+	M	Av	Tv	P	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	HDR	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷	📷		
Picture Style 📖69	📷A	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○			
	📷S	–	○	○	○	○	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
	📷P/📷L/📷N 📷F/📷I/📷1 📷2/📷3	–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○				
Auto Lighting Optimizer 📖66	📷Off	–	○	○	○	○	–	○	○	–	–	–	–	○	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
	📷On	–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○				
	📷On	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–	○	○	○	○	–	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	○	○				
Metering mode 📖64	📷	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
	📷	–	○	○	○	○	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–				
Still Image Aspect Ratio 📖45	3:2	○	○	○	○	○	○	*3	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–			
	4:3/16:9	○	○	○	○	○	–	*3	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	*4	*4			
	1:1	○	○	○	○	○	–	*3	–	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	–	–			

*3 Functions can be configured on the tab.

O Available or set automatically. – Not available.

*4 Set automatically to suit the aspect ratio of the movie recording size.

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index

Shooting Tab

Function			Shooting Mode																										
				M	Av	Tv	P										HDR												
	Rec. Mode			–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
	Image quality (43)	RAW	–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
			RAW	O	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	O	–	–	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O		
		JPEG	–	O	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	O	–	–	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O		
				O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
			 	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	Still Image Aspect Ratio (45)			See “Quick Set Menu” (172).																									
	Shooting information display (88)			O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
	Reverse Disp. (30)		On	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
			Off	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
Image review (47)* ¹		Off/2 sec./ 4 sec./8 sec./ Hold	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O			
Touch Shutter (42)	Touch Shutter	Enable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	–	–		
		Disable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O			
	Touch shutter icon	On	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	–	–		
		Off	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		

*1 Set to [Off] and cannot be adjusted when and (SERVO) are both selected.

O Available or set automatically. – Not available.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Function \ Shooting Mode																																		
Function					M	Av	Tv	P										HDR																
5	Movie rec. size (46)			See "Quick Set Menu" (172).																														
	Sound recording (60)	Sound recording	Auto/Enable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
			Manual	–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O		
			Disable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
	Rec. level		–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O		
	Wind filter/ Attenuator	Wind Filter	Auto	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	
			Disable	–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	–	–	–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O		
		Attenuator	Disable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
			Enable	–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O	O
	Movie Servo AF (59)		Enable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
			Disable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O
	AF w/ shutter button during (59)		ONE SHOT/Disable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O

O Available or set automatically. – Not available.

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



C.Fn Tab

Function			Shooting Mode																												
						M	Av	Tv	P									HDR													
C.Fn I: Exposure 88	ISO expansion	0: Disable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O				
		1: Enable	–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O				
	Safety shift	0: Disable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O				
		1: Enable	–	–	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–				
C.Fn II: Autofocus 88	AF-assist beam (LED) firing	0: Enable	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	O	O	–	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O				
		1: Disable	–	O	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O				
C.Fn III: Others 88	Custom Controls	Shutter/AE lock	–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O				
		button	–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–				
	Release shutter w/o lens	0: Disable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O				
		1: Enable	–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O				
	Retract lens on power off	0: Enable	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O	O				
		1: Disable	–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O				
Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn) 88			–	O	O	O	O	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	O	O					

O Available or set automatically. – Not available.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



INFO. Quick Control

The INFO. Quick Control screen (63) is not available in these modes: [A+], [A-], [★], [P], [S], [L], [M], [N], [O], [Q], [R], [T], [V], [W], [X], [Y], [Z], [AA], [AB], [AC], [AD], [AE], [AF], [AG], [AH], [AI], [AJ], [AK], [AL], [AM], [AN], [AO], [AP], [AQ], [AR], [AS], [AT], [AU], [AV], [AW], [AX], [AY], [AZ], [BA], [BB], [BC], [BD], [BE], [BF], [BG], [BH], [BI], [BJ], [BK], [BL], [BM], [BN], [BO], [BP], [BQ], [BR], [BS], [BT], [BU], [BV], [BW], [BX], [BY], [BZ], [CA], [CB], [CC], [CD], [CE], [CF], [CG], [CH], [CI], [CJ], [CK], [CL], [CM], [CN], [CO], [CP], [CQ], [CR], [CS], [CT], [CU], [CV], [CW], [CX], [CY], [CZ], [DA], [DB], [DC], [DD], [DE], [DF], [DG], [DH], [DI], [DJ], [DK], [DL], [DM], [DN], [DO], [DP], [DQ], [DR], [DS], [DT], [DU], [DV], [DW], [DX], [DY], [DZ], [EA], [EB], [EC], [ED], [EE], [EF], [EG], [EH], [EI], [EJ], [EK], [EL], [EM], [EN], [EO], [EP], [EQ], [ER], [ES], [ET], [EU], [EV], [EW], [EX], [EY], [EZ], [FA], [FB], [FC], [FD], [FE], [FF], [FG], [FH], [FI], [FJ], [FK], [FL], [FM], [FN], [FO], [FP], [FQ], [FR], [FS], [FT], [FU], [FV], [FW], [FX], [FY], [FZ], [GA], [GB], [GC], [GD], [GE], [GF], [GG], [GH], [GI], [GJ], [GK], [GL], [GM], [GN], [GO], [GP], [GQ], [GR], [GS], [GT], [GU], [GV], [GW], [GX], [GY], [GZ], [HA], [HB], [HC], [HD], [HE], [HF], [HG], [HH], [HI], [HJ], [HK], [HL], [HM], [HN], [HO], [HP], [HQ], [HR], [HS], [HT], [HU], [HV], [HW], [HX], [HY], [HZ], [IA], [IB], [IC], [ID], [IE], [IF], [IG], [IH], [II], [IJ], [IK], [IL], [IM], [IN], [IO], [IP], [IQ], [IR], [IS], [IT], [IU], [IV], [IW], [IX], [IY], [IZ], [JA], [JB], [JC], [JD], [JE], [JF], [JG], [JH], [JI], [JJ], [JK], [JL], [JM], [JN], [JO], [JP], [JQ], [JR], [JS], [JT], [JU], [JV], [JW], [JX], [JY], [JZ], [KA], [KB], [KC], [KD], [KE], [KF], [KG], [KH], [KI], [KJ], [KK], [KL], [KM], [KN], [KO], [KP], [KQ], [KR], [KS], [KT], [KU], [KV], [KW], [KX], [KY], [KZ], [LA], [LB], [LC], [LD], [LE], [LF], [LG], [LH], [LI], [LJ], [LK], [LL], [LM], [LN], [LO], [LP], [LQ], [LR], [LS], [LT], [LU], [LV], [LW], [LX], [LY], [LZ], [MA], [MB], [MC], [MD], [ME], [MF], [MG], [MH], [MI], [MJ], [MK], [ML], [MM], [MN], [MO], [MP], [MQ], [MR], [MS], [MT], [MU], [MV], [MW], [MX], [MY], [MZ], [NA], [NB], [NC], [ND], [NE], [NF], [NG], [NH], [NI], [NJ], [NK], [NL], [NM], [NN], [NO], [NP], [NQ], [NR], [NS], [NT], [NU], [NV], [NW], [NX], [NY], [NZ], [OA], [OB], [OC], [OD], [OE], [OF], [OG], [OH], [OI], [OJ], [OK], [OL], [OM], [ON], [OO], [OP], [OQ], [OR], [OS], [OT], [OU], [OV], [OW], [OX], [OY], [OZ], [PA], [PB], [PC], [PD], [PE], [PF], [PG], [PH], [PI], [PJ], [PK], [PL], [PM], [PN], [PO], [PP], [PQ], [PR], [PS], [PT], [PU], [PV], [PW], [PX], [PY], [PZ], [QA], [QB], [QC], [QD], [QE], [QF], [QG], [QH], [QI], [QJ], [QK], [QL], [QM], [QN], [QO], [QP], [QQ], [QR], [QS], [QT], [QU], [QV], [QW], [QX], [QY], [QZ], [RA], [RB], [RC], [RD], [RE], [RF], [RG], [RH], [RI], [RJ], [RK], [RL], [RM], [RN], [RO], [RP], [RQ], [RR], [RS], [RT], [RU], [RV], [RW], [RX], [RY], [RZ], [SA], [SB], [SC], [SD], [SE], [SF], [SG], [SH], [SI], [SJ], [SK], [SL], [SM], [SN], [SO], [SP], [SQ], [SR], [SS], [ST], [SU], [SV], [SW], [SX], [SY], [SZ], [TA], [TB], [TC], [TD], [TE], [TF], [TG], [TH], [TI], [TJ], [TK], [TL], [TM], [TN], [TO], [TP], [TQ], [TR], [TS], [TT], [TU], [TV], [TW], [TX], [TY], [TZ], [UA], [UB], [UC], [UD], [UE], [UF], [UG], [UH], [UI], [UJ], [UK], [UL], [UM], [UN], [UO], [UP], [UQ], [UR], [US], [UT], [UU], [UV], [UW], [UX], [UY], [UZ], [VA], [VB], [VC], [VD], [VE], [VF], [VG], [VH], [VI], [VJ], [VK], [VL], [VM], [VN], [VO], [VP], [VQ], [VR], [VS], [VT], [VU], [VV], [VW], [VX], [VY], [VZ], [WA], [WB], [WC], [WD], [WE], [WF], [WG], [WH], [WI], [WJ], [WK], [WL], [WM], [WN], [WO], [WP], [WQ], [WR], [WS], [WT], [WU], [WV], [WW], [WX], [WY], [WZ], [XA], [XB], [XC], [XD], [XE], [XF], [XG], [XH], [XI], [XJ], [XK], [XL], [XM], [XN], [XO], [XP], [XQ], [XR], [XS], [XT], [XU], [XV], [XW], [XX], [XY], [XZ], [YA], [YB], [YC], [YD], [YE], [YF], [YG], [YH], [YI], [YJ], [YK], [YL], [YM], [YN], [YO], [YP], [YQ], [YR], [YS], [YT], [YU], [YV], [YW], [YX], [YY], [YZ], [ZA], [ZB], [ZC], [ZD], [ZE], [ZF], [ZG], [ZH], [ZI], [ZJ], [ZK], [ZL], [ZM], [ZN], [ZO], [ZP], [ZQ], [ZR], [ZS], [ZT], [ZU], [ZV], [ZW], [ZX], [ZY], [ZZ].

Function	Shooting Mode		M	Av	Tv	P		
Shooting mode		–	–	–	–	–	O	O
Shutter speed		O	–	O	–	–	O	
Aperture value		O	O	–	–	–	O	
ISO speed		O	O	O	O	–	O	
Exposure comp.		O	O	O	O	O	O	
Flash exposure compensation		O	O	O	O	–	–	
Flash firing		O	O	O	O	–	–	
Picture Style		O	O	O	O	O	O	O
White balance		O	O	O	O	O	O	O
WB Correction		O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Auto Lighting Optimizer		O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Metering mode		O	O	O	O	–	–	
Drive Mode		O	O	O	O	–	–	
Self-Timer		O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Movie rec. size		O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Image quality		O	O	O	O	O	O	O
Sound recording		–	–	–	–	O	O	
Wind Filter		–	–	–	–	O	O	
Attenuator		–	–	–	–	O	O	

○ Available or set automatically. – Not available.

Set Up Tab

Tab	Item	Reference Page
🔧1	Create Folder	📖138
	File Numbering	📖138
	Format	📖139
	Video system	📖139
🔧2	Eco Mode	📖140
	Power Saving	📖29
	LCD Brightness	📖140
	Time Zone	📖141
	Date/Time	📖141
	Language 🗺️	📖141
🔧3	Beep	📖141
	Hints & Tips	📖142
	Mode icon size/info	📖142
	Touch Operation	📖142
	Screen auto-lock settings	📖142
	Sensor cleaning	📖142
🔧4	Wi-Fi Settings	📖112
	Mobile Device Connect Button	📖115
	Certification Logo Display	📖144
	Copyright Info	📖144
	Clear all camera settings	📖145
	📷 firmware ver.: *.*.* *	📖145

* Only available in these modes: [M], [Av], [Tv], [P], [P], and [P].

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

**Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode**

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Playback Tab

Tab	Item	Reference Page
▶ 1	Protect	📖 99
	Rotate	📖 104
	Erase	📖 102
	Rating	📖 105
	Slideshow	📖 99
	List/Play Digest Movies	📖 94
	Image Search	📖 96
▶ 2	Creative filters	📖 108
	Resize	📖 106
	Cropping	📖 107
	Red-Eye Correction	📖 108
	Print settings	📖 155
	Photobook Set-up	📖 160
▶ 3	Transition Effect	📖 92
	Index Effect	📖 95
	Scroll Display	📖 92
	Auto Rotate	📖 104
	Resume	📖 92
▶ 4	Playback information display	📖 93

Quick Set Menu in Playback Mode

Item	Reference Page
Protect	📖 99
Rotate	📖 104
Rating	📖 105
Image Search	📖 96
Play Movie	📖 92
Play Linked Digest Movie	📖 94
Print	📖 154
Resize	📖 106
Cropping	📖 107
Creative filters	📖 108
Apply [★] settings*	📖 50
Wi-Fi function	📖 112

* In shooting modes other than [★]: [Apply settings to ★]

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Handling Precautions

- The camera is a high-precision electronic device. Avoid dropping it or subjecting it to strong impact.
- Never bring the camera near magnets, motors, or other devices that generate strong electromagnetic fields, which may cause malfunction or erase image data.
- If water droplets or dirt adheres to the camera or screen, wipe with a dry soft cloth, such as an eyeglass cloth. Do not rub hard or apply force.
- Never use cleaners containing organic solvents to clean the camera or screen.
- Use a blower brush to remove dust from the lens. If cleaning is difficult, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk.
- To prevent condensation from forming on the camera after sudden temperature changes (when the camera is transferred from cold to warm environments), put the camera in an airtight, resealable plastic bag and let it gradually adjust to the temperature before removing it from the bag.
- Store unused battery packs in a plastic bag or other container. To maintain battery performance if you will not use the battery pack for some time, about once a year charge it and then use the camera until it runs out of power before storing the battery pack.
- If condensation does form on the camera, stop using it immediately. Continuing to use the camera in this state may damage it. Remove the lens, battery pack, and memory card, and wait until the moisture has evaporated before resuming use.
- Do not touch the camera or lens contacts. This may cause the camera to malfunction.
- To avoid damaging the image sensor, do not touch it when it is exposed after a lens is removed.
- Do not block the shutter operation with your finger, etc. Doing so may cause a malfunction.

- After detaching the lens from the camera, put down the lens with the rear end up and attach the lens caps to avoid scratching the lens surface and electrical contacts.
- Besides dust entering the camera from outside, in rare cases lubricant from the camera's internal parts may adhere to the front of the sensor. If spots are still visible on images after automatic sensor cleaning, contact a Canon Customer Support Help Desk to request sensor cleaning.
- Periodically cleaning the camera's body and lens mount with a soft lens cleaning cloth is recommended.

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Specifications

Type

Type	Digital single-lens non-reflex AF/AE camera
Recording media	SD memory card, SDHC memory card, SDXC memory card • UHS-I compatible
Image sensor size	Approx. 22.3 x 14.9 mm (APS-C Size)
Compatible lenses	Canon EF-M, EF*, and EF-S* lenses (35mm film equivalent focal length is approx. 1.6 times the lens focal length) * Requires Mount Adapter EF-EOS M
Lens mount	Canon EF-M mount

Image Sensor

Type	CMOS sensor (supporting Hybrid CMOS AF II)
Effective pixels	Approx. 18.0 megapixels
Total pixels	Approx. 18.5 megapixels
Aspect ratio	3:2
Dust removal feature	Auto / Manual

Recording Format

File Format	Design rule for Camera File system 2.0
Data Type	JPEG, RAW (14-bit, Canon original) RAW+JPEG simultaneous recording possible
Recording Pixels	L (Large): Approx. 17.9 megapixels (5184 x 3456) M (Medium): Approx. 12.4 megapixels (4320 x 2880) S1 (Small 1): Approx. 5.5 megapixels (2880 x 1920) S2 (Small 2): Approx. 3.5 megapixels (2304 x 1536) S3 (Small 3): Approx. 350,000 pixels (720 x 480) RAW: Approx. 17.9 megapixels (5184 x 3456)
Folder setting	Monthly and daily can be selected
File No.	Continuous, Auto Reset

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Image Processing during Shooting

Picture Style	Auto, Standard, Portrait, Landscape, Neutral, Faithful, Monochrome, User Def. 1 - 3
White balance	Auto, Preset (Daylight, Shade, Cloudy, Tungsten light, White fluorescent light, Flash), Custom white balance correction feature available
Noise reduction	Applicable to long exposures and high ISO speed shots
Automatic image brightness correction	Auto Lighting Optimizer
Highlight tone priority	Provided
Lens aberration correction	Peripheral illumination correction, Chromatic aberration correction
Creative Assist	Background (Blurred-Sharp), Brightness (Dark-Light), Contrast (Low-High), Saturation (Neutral-Vivid), Color tone (Cool-Warm), Monochrome

Autofocus

Type	Hybrid CMOS AF II system (1-point AF, Face+Tracking priority AF)
AF points	49 points (Maximum)
Focusing brightness range	EV 1 - 18 (at room temperature, ISO 100, with EF-M22mm f/2 STM)
AF operation	One-Shot AF, Servo AF
AF-assist beam	Built-in (LED lamp)

Exposure Control

Metering modes	Real-time metering using the image sensor Evaluative metering Partial metering Spot metering Center-weighted average
Brightness metering range	EV 1 - 20 (at room temperature, ISO 100)
Exposure control	Program AE (modes other than Tv, Av, and M), Shutter priority AE, Aperture priority AE, Manual exposure
ISO speed (Recommended exposure index)	Automatically or manually set in a range of ISO 100-12800 (equivalent to 25600 when expanded) Max. auto ISO speed can be configured when mode dial is set to P, Tv, Av, M, or Movie mode
Exposure compensation	Manual: ± 3 stops in 1/3-stop increments
AE lock	Auto / Manual

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Shutter

Type	Electronically controlled focal-plane shutter
Shutter speed	1/4000 sec. to 30 sec. (total shutter speed range; available range varies by shooting mode), X-sync at 1/200 sec.

Flash Units

Built-in flash	Retracting, manual pop-up flash Guide No. approx. 5 (ISO 100·m) Supports angle of view equivalent to focal length of approx. 15 mm (35mm film equivalent: approx. 24 mm) Recharging time: approx. 3 sec.
Flash metering mode	E-TTL II autoflash
Flash exposure compensation	±2 stops in 1/3-stop increments
FE lock	Provided

Drive, Self-timer System

Drive mode	Single-image shooting, Continuous shooting
Continuous shooting speed	Max. approx. 4.6 fps
Max. burst	JPEG: Approx. 1000 images RAW: Approx. 7 images RAW+JPEG Large/Fine: Approx. 4 images • Measured by Canon testing standards (ISO 200, Picture Style: using standard settings), using a 16 GB UHS-I memory card, which complies with Canon testing standards.
Self-timer mode	Off, 2-second self-timer, 10-second self-timer, Custom timer

Still Image Shooting

Aspect ratio settings	3:2, 4:3, 16:9, 1:1
Focus mode	AF, MF, AF+MF (MF, and MF in AF+MF mode: approx. 5x/10x magnification and MF peaking supported)
Continuous AF	Provided
Touch Shutter	Provided
Grid display	Two types
Depth-of-field preview	Provided

Movie Shooting

Recording Format	MP4
Movie	MPEG-4 AVC/H.264 Variable (averaged) bit rate
Audio	MPEG-4 AAC-LC
Recording size and frame rate	1920x1080 (Full HD): 29.97 fps (NTSC) / 23.98 fps* (NTSC) / 25.00 fps (PAL) 1280x720 (HD): 59.94 fps (NTSC) / 50.00 fps (PAL) 640x480 (SD): 29.97 fps (NTSC) / 25.00 fps (PAL) * Actual frame rate: 23.976 fps.
File size	1920x1080 (29.97 fps/23.98 fps/25.00 fps): 172.6 MB/min. 1280x720 (59.94 fps/50.00 fps): 115.4 MB/min. 640x480 (29.97 fps/25.00 fps): 22.4 MB/min.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Focusing	Hybrid CMOS AF II system (1-point AF, Face+Tracking priority AF)
Focus mode	AF, MF, AF+MF (Manual focus after One-Shot AF) (MF, and MF in AF+MF mode: MF peaking supported)
Servo AF	Can be paused and resumed.
Brightness metering range	EV 1 - 20 (at room temperature, ISO 100)
Metering mode	Evaluative metering
Exposure control	Movie auto exposure mode, miniature effect movie mode, still image mode: Shutter speed of 1/30 to 1/4000 sec.*, with aperture and ISO speed set automatically. Movie manual exposure mode: Shutter speed of 1/30 to 1/4000 sec.*, with aperture and ISO speed (auto or a specific value) set manually. * The minimum shutter speed is limited to 1/30 sec. at 24/25/30 fps or 1/60 sec. at 50/60 fps.
Exposure compensation	±3 stops in 1/3-stop increments
ISO speed (Recommended exposure index)	Automatically or manually set in a range of ISO 100 – 6400 (equivalent to 12800 when expanded)* * Manual mode only
Miniature effect movie	Provided
Still image shooting	Provided
Grid display	Two types
Sound recording	Built-in stereo microphone, recording level adjustable, wind filter provided, attenuator provided

Screen (Monitor)

Type	TFT color, liquid-crystal monitor
Screen size / Dots	Wide 7.5 cm (3.0") Touchscreen (3:2) / approx. 1.04 million dots
Brightness adjustment	Manual (5 levels)
Angle adjustment	Tilt type: Approx. 180° upward
Interface languages	English, German, French, Dutch, Danish, Portuguese, Finnish, Italian, Norwegian, Swedish, Spanish, Greek, Russian, Polish, Czech, Hungarian, Romanian, Ukrainian, Turkish, Arabic, Thai, Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, Korean, and Japanese
Hints & Tips	Displayable

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Playback Functions

Image display formats	Single image display, single image + info display (basic info, shooting info, histogram, lens info, Picture Style, noise reduction, correction data), image index (6/12/42/110), image rotate possible
Zoom magnification	Approx. 1.5x to 10x
Highlight alert	Overexposed highlights blink
Image browsing methods	Single image, jump by 10 or 100 images, filter images (by shooting date, by people, by movies, by stills, by rating), Scroll Display
Image rotate	Provided
Rating	Provided
Image search	Rating, Shot Date, People, Stills, Movie, Digest
Movie playback	Enabled
Protect images	Provided
Slideshow	All images Playback is also possible after filtering the images using Image Search

Post-processing of Images

Possible only with images taken with same model

Creative filters	Grainy B/W, Soft focus, Fish-eye effect, Art bold effect, Water painting effect, Toy camera effect, Miniature effect
Resize	Provided
Red-eye correction	Provided

Direct Printing

Type	PictBridge (USB and Wireless LAN)
Printable images	JPEG and RAW images (can print RAW images displayed as JPEG only with images taken with the same model), MP4
Print ordering	Complies to DPOF Version 1.1

Custom Functions

Custom Functions	6 types
Copyright information	Entry and inclusion possible

Interfaces

Digital terminal	For communications with a computer and PictBridge (Hi-Speed USB equivalent)
HDMI mini OUT terminal	Type C (Switches resolution automatically)

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN)

Standards compliance	IEEE 802.11b/g/n
Transmission method	DS-SS modulation (IEEE 802.11b), OFDM modulation (IEEE 802.11g/n)
Transmission range	Approx. 15 m (49 ft.) - When connected to a smartphone or tablet - With no obstructions between transmitting and receiving antennas, and there is no radio interference
Transmission frequency (central frequency)	Frequency: 2412-2462 MHz Channels: 1-11 ch
Connection method	Infrastructure mode*, Camera access point mode, Ad hoc mode * Wi-Fi Protected Setup supported
Security	Authentication method: Open system, WPA-PSK, WPA2-PSK Encryption: WEP, TKIP, AES

Network Functions

Transfer images between cameras	Transferring one image, transferring selected images, transferring resized images
Connection to smartphones	Viewing, controlling, receiving images using a smartphone Sending images to smartphone connected via NFC Remote control of the camera using a smartphone
Print from Wi-Fi printers	Images to be printed can be sent to a printer supporting Wi-Fi
Send images to a Web service	Images in the camera or links to images can be sent to registered Web services
View images using a media player	Images can be viewed using a DLNA-compatible media player

Power Supplies

Battery	One Battery Pack: LP-E12 AC power can be supplied via AC Adapter Kit ACK-E12.
Number of possible shots	Room temperature (23°C/73°F): approx. 255 images; low temperature (0°C/32°F): approx. 210 images
Recordable movie time	Room temperature (23°C/73°F): approx. 1 h 45 min.; low temperature (0°C/32°F): approx. 1 h 40 min. (When using fully charged Battery Pack LP-E12)

Dimensions and Weight

Dimensions	Approx. 108.0 (W) x 66.6 (H) x 35.0 (D) mm (4.25 x 2.62 x 1.38 in.)
Weight	Approx. 301 g (10.6 oz.) (including Body + battery pack + card) Approx. 265 g (9.35 oz.) (Body only, excluding lens cap)

Operating Environment

Working temperature	0°C - 40°C (32°F - 104°F)
Working humidity	85% or less

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Number of Shots per Memory Card

Using a 16 GB memory card

Image Quality	File Size (Approx. MB)	Number of Shots (Approx.)	Maximum Burst (Approx.)
	6.8	2208	1000
	4.4	3397	1000
	5.8	2612	1000
	3.6	4152	1000
	3.0	5061	1000
	2.0	7592	1000
	1.8	8377	1000
	0.3	48592	1000
	22.7	666	7
RAW+JPEG	RAW and JPEG total	512	4

- Image file size, number of possible shots, and maximum burst during continuous shooting are measured based on Canon's testing standards (3:2 aspect ratio, ISO 200, and Standard Picture Style), using a UHS-I compatible, 16 GB memory card that meets Canon's testing standards. These values vary depending on the shooting conditions.

Recording Time per Memory Card

Using a 16 GB memory card

Image Quality	Total Recording Time (approx.)	File Size (Approx.)
  	1 hr. 26 min. 5 sec.	172.6 MB/min.
 	2 hr. 8 min. 27 sec.	115.4 MB/min.
 	10 hr. 22 min. 35 sec.	22.4 MB/min.

- Continuous recording is possible until the memory card becomes full or the recording time reaches approx. 29 minutes and 59 seconds.
- On some memory cards, recording may stop before this time has elapsed. Faster memory cards are required when shooting stills during movie recording.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Approximate Built-in Flash Range

(approx. m [ft.])

ISO Speed	With an EF-M15-45mm f/3.5-6.3 IS STM Lens	
	Wide-angle: 15 mm	Telephoto: 45 mm
100	0.5 - 1.4 [1.6 - 4.6]	0.5 - 0.9 [1.6 - 3.0]
200	0.5 - 2.0 [1.6 - 6.6]	0.5 - 1.3 [1.6 - 4.3]
400	0.5 - 2.9 [1.6 - 9.5]	0.5 - 1.8 [1.6 - 5.9]
800	0.7 - 4.0 [2.3 - 13.1]	0.5 - 2.5 [1.6 - 8.2]
1600	1.0 - 5.7 [3.3 - 18.7]	0.5 - 3.6 [1.6 - 11.8]
3200	1.5 - 8.1 [4.9 - 26.6]	0.8 - 5.1 [2.6 - 16.7]
6400	2.1 - 11.4 [6.9 - 37.4]	1.2 - 7.1 [3.9 - 23.3]
12800	2.9 - 16.2 [9.5 - 53.1]	1.6 - 10.1 [5.2 - 33.1]
H (equivalent to 25600)	4.1 - 22.9 [13.5 - 75.1]	2.4 - 14.3 [7.9 - 46.9]

Battery Pack LP-E12

Type	Rechargeable lithium-ion battery
Rated voltage	7.2 V DC
Capacity	875 mAh
Working temperature	Charging: 5°C - 40°C (41°F - 104°F) Shooting: 0°C - 40°C (32°F - 104°F)
Working humidity	85% or less

Battery Charger LC-E12/LC-E12E

Compatible battery	Battery Pack LP-E12
Recharging time	Approx. 2 hours (at room temperature)
Rated input	100 - 240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
Rated output	8.4 V DC/540 mA
Working temperature	5°C - 40°C (41°F - 104°F)
Working humidity	85% or less

- All data is based on Canon testing standards.
- Number of possible shots, dimensions, and weight (for camera body alone and including battery pack and memory card) listed above are based on CIPA testing standards and guidelines.
- Camera specifications or appearance are subject to change without notice.
- If a problem occurs with a non-Canon lens attached to the camera, consult the respective lens manufacturer.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Index

Numbers

1-point AF (AF frame mode) 71

A

AC adapter kit 148, 151

Accessories 148

AF frames 71

AF-point zoom 75

Art bold effect (shooting mode) 55

Aspect ratio 45

Auto Lighting Optimizer 66

Auto mode (shooting mode) 25, 35

Auto rotate 104

B

Batteries → Date/time (date/time battery)

Battery charger 2, 148

Battery pack

Charging 18

Eco mode 140

Level 167

Power saving 29

Black and white images 58

B/W (monochrome) 69

C

Camera

Reset all 145

Camera access point mode 121

Camera Connect 113

CANON iMAGE GATEWAY 121

Charging 18

Chromatic aberration correction 80

Cleaning (image sensor) 142

Close-up (shooting mode) 52

Color temperature 68

Color (white balance) 67

Compression 43

Contrast 70

Creative Assist (shooting mode) 48

Cropping 107, 156

Custom Functions 88

Custom WB 67

Custom white balance 67

D

Date/time

Changing 21

Date/time battery 21

Settings 20

World clock 141

DC coupler 151

Deactivating flash 77

Defaults → Reset all

Direct printing 187

Display language 21

Display period 47

DLNA 112

DPOF 158

E

Eco mode 140

Editing

Cropping 107

Red-eye correction 108

Resizing images 106

Editing or erasing connection information 135

Erasing 102

Erasing all 103

Error messages 165

Exposure

AE lock 64

Compensation 63

FE lock 78

F

Face+Tracking (AF frame mode) 72

Faithful 69

Favorites 105

FE lock 78

File numbering 138

Filter effect 70

Firmware 145

Fish-eye effect (shooting mode) 55

Flash

Deactivating flash 77

Flash exposure compensation 77

On 76

Slow synchro 77

Flash exposure compensation 77

Focusing

AF frames 71

MF peaking 76

Servo AF 73

Touch AF 72

Focus lock 72

Focus range

Manual focus 75

Food (shooting mode) 53

G

Grainy B/W (shooting mode) 58

Grid lines 30

H

Handheld nightscene (shooting mode) 52

HDMI cable 150

High dynamic range (shooting mode) 54

High ISO speed noise reduction 81

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



Household power 151
Hybrid Auto (shooting mode) 37

I

Icons 167, 168
Image dust prevention 142
Image quality → Compression ratio
(image quality)
Images
 Display period 47
 Erasing 102
 Playback → Viewing
 Protecting 99
Image stabilization 79
Image Sync 131
Index display 95
Indicator 34, 47
Installation 135, 153
Interface cable 2, 153
ISO speed 65

J

Jump display 97

L

Landscape (shooting mode) 52
Lens 22
 Lock release 22
Level 167
Long exposure noise reduction 82

M

M (shooting mode) 85
Macro photography 52
Magnified display 98
Manual focus 75
Memory cards 2
Menu
 Basic operations 32
 Table 170
Metering method 64
MF (Manual focusing) 75
MF peaking 76
Miniature effect (shooting mode) 56
Mobile device connection button 115,
134
Movies
 Editing 109
 Image quality (recording pixels/
 frame rate) 43, 51
Multi Shot Noise Reduction 81

N

Neck strap → Strap
Noise reduction
 High ISO speed 81
 Long exposure 82

O

On 77

P

P (shooting mode) 62
Package contents 2
Peripheral illumination correction 80
Photobook set-up 160
PictBridge 149, 154
Picture Style 69
Playback → Viewing
Portrait (shooting mode) 52
Power 148 → AC adapter kit,
→ Battery charger, → Battery pack
Power saving 29
Printing 154
Program AE 62
Protecting 99

Q

Q menu → Quick Set menu
Quick Set menu
 Basic operations 31
 Table 172

R

Rating 106
RAW 44
Recording pixels (image size) 43
Red-eye correction 108
Remote shooting 134
Reset all 145
Resizing images 106
Rotating 104

S

Saturation 70
Saving images to a computer 132,
153
Screen
 Display language 21
 Icons 167, 168
 Menu → Quick Set menu, Menu
SD/SDHC/SDXC memory cards
 → Memory cards
Searching 96
Self portrait (shooting mode) 51
Self-timer 40
 2-second self-timer 41
 Customizing the self-timer 41
Sending images 121
Sending images to another camera
128
Sending images to a smartphone 113
Sending images to Web services 124
Sensor cleaning 142
Servo AF 73
Sharpness 70
Shooting
 Shooting information 167
Single-image display 26
Slideshow 99
Slow synchro 77
Soft focus (shooting mode) 58

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Software	
Installation	153
Saving images to a computer	132, 153
User manual	152
Sounds	138
Sports (shooting mode)	52
Strap	17
T	
Terminal	150, 151, 154
Tone priority	66
Toning effect	70
Touch AF	72
Touch Shutter	42
Toy camera effect (shooting mode)	57
Traveling with the camera	141
Tripod socket	4
Troubleshooting	161
TV display	150
Tv (shooting mode)	83
V	
Viewing	26
Image search	96
Index display	95
Jump display	97
Magnified image	98
Single-image display	26

Slideshow	99
TV display	150
W	
Water painting effect (shooting mode)	56
White balance (color)	67
Wi-Fi functions	112
Wind Filter	61
World clock	141
Z	
Zoom	25

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Wi-Fi (Wireless LAN) Precautions

- The model number is PC2179 (including WLAN module model WM227).
- Countries and Regions Permitting WLAN Use
 - Use of WLAN is restricted in some countries and regions, and illegal use may be punishable under national or local regulations. To avoid violating WLAN regulations, visit the Canon website to check where use is allowed.
Note that Canon cannot be held liable for any problems arising from WLAN use in other countries and regions.
- Doing any of the following may incur legal penalties:
 - Altering or modifying the product
 - Removing the certification labels from the product
- According to foreign exchange and foreign trade law regulations, export permission (or service transaction permission) from the Japanese government is necessary to export strategic resources or services (including this product) outside Japan.
- Because this product includes American encryption software, it falls under U.S. Export Administration Regulations, and cannot be exported to or brought into a country under U.S. trade embargo.
- Be sure to make notes of the wireless LAN settings you use.
The wireless LAN settings saved to this product may change or be erased due to incorrect operation of the product, the effects of radio waves or static electricity, or accident or malfunction. Be sure to make notes of wireless LAN settings as a precaution. Please note that Canon accepts no responsibility for direct or indirect damages or loss of earnings resulting from a degradation or disappearance of content.
- When transferring this product to another person, disposing of it, or sending it for repair, be sure to note the wireless LAN settings and reset the product to its default settings (erase settings) if necessary.

- Canon will not make compensation for damages resulting from loss or theft of the product.
Canon accepts no responsibility for damages or loss resulting from unauthorized access or use of target devices registered on this product due to loss or theft of the product.
- Be sure to use the product as directed in this guide.
Be sure to use the wireless LAN function of this product within the guidelines noted in this guide. Canon accepts no responsibility for damages or loss if the function and product are used in ways other than as described in this guide.
- Do not use the wireless LAN function of this product near medical equipment or other electronic equipment.
Use of the wireless LAN function near medical equipment or other electronic equipment may affect operation of those devices.

Radio Wave Interference Precautions

- This product may receive interference from other devices that emit radio waves. To avoid interference, be sure to use this product as far away as possible from such devices, or avoid using the devices at the same time as this product.

Security Precautions

Because Wi-Fi uses radio waves to transmit signals, security precautions more stringent than when using a LAN cable are required.

Keep the following points in mind when using Wi-Fi.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index



- Only use networks you are authorized to use.
This product searches for Wi-Fi networks in the vicinity and displays the results on the screen. Networks you are not authorized to use (unknown networks) may also be displayed. However, attempting to connect to or using such networks could be regarded as unauthorized access. Be sure to use only networks you are authorized to use, and do not attempt to connect to other unknown networks.

If security settings have not been properly set, the following problems may occur.

- Transmission monitoring**
Third parties with malicious intent may monitor Wi-Fi transmissions and attempt to acquire the data you are sending.
- Unauthorized network access**
Third parties with malicious intent may gain unauthorized access to the network you are using to steal, modify, or destroy information. Additionally, you could fall victim to other types of unauthorized access such as impersonation (where someone assumes an identity to gain access to unauthorized information) or springboard attacks (where someone gains unauthorized access to your network as a springboard to cover their tracks when infiltrating other systems).

To prevent these types of problems from occurring, be sure to thoroughly secure your Wi-Fi network.

Only use this camera's Wi-Fi function with a proper understanding of Wi-Fi security, and balance risk and convenience when adjusting security settings.



The camera can print to PictBridge-compatible printers via Wi-Fi. PictBridge technical standards make it easy to connect digital cameras, printers, and other devices directly. Additionally, a new standard called DPS over IP enables PictBridge connections in network environments, and the camera is also compatible with this standard.

Trademarks and Licensing

- Microsoft and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Macintosh and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- App Store, iPhone, and iPad are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- The SDXC logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.
- HDMI, the HDMI logo and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing, LLC.
- Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Alliance®, WPA™, WPA2™ and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.
- The N-Mark is a trademark or registered trademark of NFC Forum, Inc. in the United States and in other countries.
- All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
- This device incorporates exFAT technology licensed from Microsoft.
- This product is licensed under AT&T patents for the MPEG-4 standard and may be used for encoding MPEG-4 compliant video and/or decoding MPEG-4 compliant video that was encoded only (1) for a personal and non-commercial purpose or (2) by a video provider licensed under the AT&T patents to provide MPEG-4 compliant video. No license is granted or implied for any other use for MPEG-4 standard.

Before Use
Basic Guide
Advanced Guide
Camera Basics
Auto Mode / Hybrid Auto Mode
Other Shooting Modes
P Mode
Tv, Av, and M Mode
Playback Mode
Wi-Fi Functions
Setting Menu
Accessories
Appendix
Index



Disclaimer

- Unauthorized reproduction of this guide is prohibited.
- All measurements based on Canon testing standards.
- Information subject to change without notice, as are product specifications and appearance.
- Illustrations and screenshots in this guide may differ slightly from the actual equipment.
- The above items notwithstanding, Canon cannot be held liable for any loss arising from the use of this product.

Before Use

Basic Guide

Advanced Guide

Camera Basics

Auto Mode /
Hybrid Auto Mode

Other Shooting Modes

P Mode

Tv, Av, and M Mode

Playback Mode

Wi-Fi Functions

Setting Menu

Accessories

Appendix

Index

